

# **Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU**

# BC68F2130/BC68F2140

Revision: V1.10 Date: May 19, 2017

www.holtek.com



# **Table of Contents**

| Features   |    |
|--|----|
| CPU Features   |    |
| Peripheral Features  |    |
| RF Transmitter Features                                      |    |
| General Description  |    |
| Block Diagram  | 8  |
| Selection Table  | 8  |
| Pin Assignment   | 9  |
| Pin Description  | 9  |
| Absolute Maximum Ratings                                     | 12 |
| D.C. Characteristics   |    |
| A.C. Characteristics   | 13 |
| LVD/LVR Electrical Characteristics                           |    |
| RF Transmitter Electrical Characteristics                    |    |
| Power-on Reset Characteristics                               |    |
| System Architecture  |    |
| Clocking and Pipelining                                      |    |
| Program Counter  |    |
| Stack  |    |
| Arithmetic and Logic Unit – ALU                              | 18 |
| Flash Program Memory   | 19 |
| Structure  |    |
| Special Vectors  | 19 |
| Look-up Table  |    |
| Table Program Example  |    |
| In Circuit Programming – ICP                                 |    |
| On-Chip Debug Support – OCDSIn Application Programming – IAP |    |
|  |    |
| Data Memory  |    |
| Data Memory Addressing                                       |    |
| General Purpose Data Memory                                  |    |
| Special Purpose Data Memory                                  |    |
| Special Function Register Description                        |    |
| Indirect Addressing Registers – IAR0, IAR1, IAR2             |    |
| Memory Pointers – MP0, MP1L, MP1H, MP2L, MP2H                |    |
| Accumulator – ACC  | 34 |
| Program Counter Low Register – PCL                           | 35 |



| Look-up Table Registers – TBLP, TBHP, TBLH | 35 |
|--|----|
| Status Register – STATUS                   | 35 |
| Oscillators                                | 37 |
| Oscillator Overview                        | 37 |
| System Clock Configurations                | 37 |
| External Crystal/Ceramic Oscillator – HXT  | 38 |
| Internal High Speed RC Oscillator – HIRC   |    |
| Internal 32kHz Oscillator – LIRC           | 39 |
| Operating Modes and System Clocks          | 39 |
| System Clocks                              |    |
| System Operation Modes                     | 40 |
| Control Registers                          |    |
| Operating Mode Switching                   |    |
| Standby Current Considerations             |    |
| Wake-up                                    | 50 |
| Watchdog Timer                             | 52 |
| Watchdog Timer Clock Source                |    |
| Watchdog Timer Control Register            |    |
| Watchdog Timer Operation                   | 53 |
| Reset and Initialisation                   | 54 |
| Reset Functions                            | 54 |
| Reset Initial Conditions                   | 58 |
| Input/Output Ports                         | 61 |
| Pull-high Resistors                        | 62 |
| Port A Wake-up                             | 62 |
| I/O Port Control Registers                 |    |
| Pin-shared Functions                       |    |
| I/O Pin Structures                         |    |
| Programming Considerations                 | 66 |
| Timer Modules – TM                         | 66 |
| Introduction                               |    |
| TM Operation                               |    |
| TM Clock Source                            | 67 |
| TM Interrupts                              |    |
| TM External Pins                           |    |
| TM Input/Output Pin Selection              |    |
| Programming Considerations                 | 68 |
| Compact Type TM - CTM                      |    |
| Compact TM Operation                       |    |
| Compact Type TM Register Description       | 70 |
| Compact Type TM Operating Modes            | 74 |



| Pe  | riodic Type TM – PTM                           | 80  |
|-----|--|-----|
|     | Periodic TM Operation                          |     |
|     | Periodic Type TM Register Description          | 80  |
|     | Periodic Type TM Operating Modes               | 85  |
| RF  | Transmitter                                    | 94  |
|     | RF Transmitter Abbreviation Notes              | 94  |
|     | RF Transmitter Control Registers               | 94  |
|     | Modulation Modes and Operating Modes Selection | 100 |
|     | TX FIFO Mode in Burst Mode                     | 102 |
|     | RF Channel Setup                               | 104 |
|     | Software Programming Guide                     | 106 |
| Int | errupts  | 109 |
|     | Interrupt Registers                            | 109 |
|     | Interrupt Operation                            | 113 |
|     | External Interrupts                            | 114 |
|     | Time Base Interrupts                           | 115 |
|     | Multi-function Interrupts                      | 117 |
|     | RF TX FIFO Length Margin Detect Interrupt      | 117 |
|     | RF Burst Mode Transmit Complete Interrupt      | 118 |
|     | LVD Interrupt                                  | 118 |
|     | TM Interrupts                                  | 118 |
|     | Interrupt Wake-up Function                     | 119 |
|     | Programming Considerations                     | 119 |
| Lo  | w Voltage Detector – LVD                       | 120 |
|     | LVD Register                                   | 120 |
|     | LVD Operation                                  | 121 |
| Co  | onfiguration Options                           | 121 |
| Αp  | pplication Circuits                            | 122 |
| Ins | struction Set                                  | 123 |
|     | Introduction                                   | 123 |
|     | Instruction Timing                             | 123 |
|     | Moving and Transferring Data                   | 123 |
|     | Arithmetic Operations                          | 123 |
|     | Logical and Rotate Operation                   | 124 |
|     | Branches and Control Transfer                  | 124 |
|     | Bit Operations                                 | 124 |
|     | Table Read Operations                          | 124 |
|     | Other Operations                               | 124 |
| Ins | struction Set Summary                          | 125 |
|     | Table Conventions                              |     |
|     | Extended Instruction Set                       | 127 |
| Ins | struction Definition                           | 129 |
|     | Extended Instruction Definition                | 138 |

# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU



| Package Information                                   | . 145 |
|---|-------|
| 16-pin NSOP (150mil) Outline Dimensions (Exposed Pad) | 146   |
| 24-pin SSOP (150mil) Outline Dimensions (Exposed Pad) | 147   |



## **Features**

#### **CPU Features**

- · Operating voltage
  - f<sub>SYS</sub>=16MHz: 2.0V~3.6V
- Up to  $0.25\mu s$  instruction cycle with 16MHz system clock at  $V_{DD}$ =5V
- Power saving and wake-up functions to reduce power consumption
- · Oscillator types:
  - RF External High Speed Crystal HXT
  - Internal High Speed RC HIRC
  - Internal Low Speed 32kHz RC LIRC
- Multi-mode operation: NORMAL, SLOW, IDLE, SLEEP and DEEP SLEEP
- Fully integrated internal 16MHz oscillator requires no external components
- All instructions executed in 1~3 instruction cycles
- · Table read instructions
- 115 powerful instructions
- · 8-level subroutine nesting
- · Bit manipulation instruction

## **Peripheral Features**

- Flash Program Memory: 2K×16 ~ 4K×16
- RAM Data Memory: 256×8
- In Application Programming function IAP
- · Watchdog Timer function
- Up to 14 bidirectional I/O lines
- 2 pin-shared external interrupts
- Multiple Timer Modules for time measurement, input capture, compare match output or PWM output or single pulse output function
  - 1 Compact type 10-bit Timer Module CTM
  - 1 Periodic type 10-bit Timer Module PTM
- · Dual Time-Base functions for generation of fixed time interrupt signals
- Integrated 1.5V LDO
- · Low voltage reset function
- · Low voltage detect function
- Flash program memory can be re-programmed up to 100,000 times
- Flash program memory data retention > 10 years
- Package types: 16-pin NSOP-EP, 24-pin SSOP-EP

Rev. 1.10 6 May 19, 2017



#### **RF Transmitter Features**

- · Complete ultra high frequency OOK/FSK transmitter with low transmission phase noise
- Supports 315/433/868/915MHz frequency bands
- Programmable channel setting with < 2kHz resolution
- OOK data rates 0.5Kbps~25Kbps, FSK data rates 0.5Kbps~100Kbps
- Output power up to +13dBm (software controlled output power: 0, +10dBm, +13dBm)
- RF external crystal: 12MHz/12.8MHz/16MHz/19.2MHz

# **General Description**

These Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter MCUs provide a combination of a fully featured MCU and an RF transmitter function, providing them with superior flexibility for use in a wide range of wireless I/O control applications such as industrial control, consumer products, subsystem controllers, etc.

Offering users the convenience of Flash Memory multi-programming features, the devices also include a wide range of functions and features. Other memory includes an area of RAM Data Memory for storage of non-volatile data such as serial numbers, calibration data etc. By using Holtek's In Application Programming technology, users have a convenient means to directly store their measured data in the Flash Program Memory as well as having the ability to easily update their application programs.

Multiple and extremely flexible Timer Modules provide timing, pulse generation and PWM generation functions. Protective features such as an internal Watchdog Timer, Low Voltage Reset and Low Voltage Detector coupled with excellent noise immunity and ESD protection ensure that reliable operation is maintained in hostile electrical environments.

A full choice of external, internal high and low oscillators is provided including two fully integrated system oscillators which require no external components for their implementation. The ability to operate and switch dynamically between a range of operating modes using different clock sources gives users the ability to optimise the conflicting demands of microcontroller performance and power consumption.

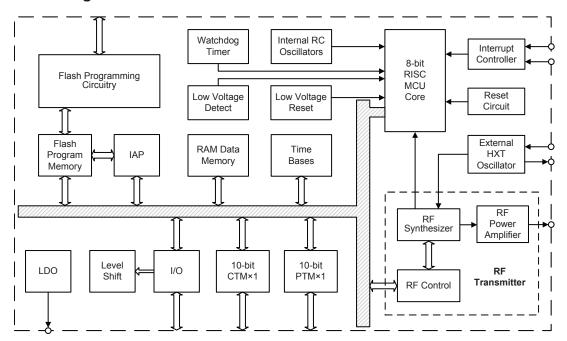
The integrated RF transmitter can operate at the 315MHz, 433MHz, 868MHz and 915MHz frequency bands. The additional of a crystal and a limited number of external components is all that is required to create a complete and versatile RF transmitter system. The devices include an internal power amplifier and are capable of delivering +13dBm (Max.) into a 50W load. Such a power level enables a small form factor transmitter to operate near the maximum transmission regulation limits. The devices can operate with OOK – On-Off Keying and FSK – Frequency Shift Keying receiver types. The FSK data rate is up to 100Kbps, allowing the devices to support more complicated control protocols.

The inclusion of flexible I/O programming features, Time-Base functions along with many other features ensure that the devices will be highly capable of providing cost effective MCU Sub-1GHz RF transmitter solutions for remote wireless applications.

Rev. 1.10 7 May 19, 2017



# **Block Diagram**



# **Selection Table**

Most features are common to these devices, the main features distinguishing them are Flash Memory capacity, I/O count and the package type. The following table summarises the main features of each device.

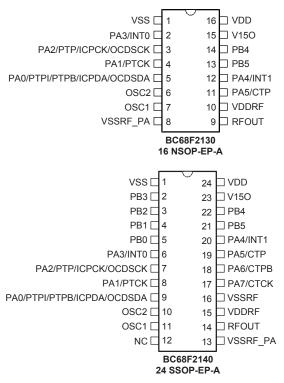
| Part No.  | V <sub>DD</sub> | ROM   | RAM   | I/O | Ext. Int. | LDO |
|-----------|-----------------|-------|-------|-----|-----------|-----|
| BC68F2130 | 2.0V~3.6V       | 2K×16 | 256×8 | 8   | 2         | √   |
| BC68F2140 | 2.0V~3.6V       | 4K×16 | 256×8 | 14  | 2         | √   |

| Part No.              | Timer Module                 | Integra    | ated RF    | Time Base   | Stack | Package   |  |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|------------|------------|-------------|-------|-----------|--|
| Part No. Timer Module |                              | Band       | Туре       | Tillie Dase | Stack | Fackage   |  |
| BC68F2130             | 10-bit CTM×1<br>10-bit PTM×1 | 315~915MHz | OOK/FSK TX | 2           | 8     | 16NSOP-EP |  |
| BC68F2140             | 10-bit CTM×1<br>10-bit PTM×1 | 315~915MHz | OOK/FSK TX | 2           | 8     | 24SSOP-EP |  |

Rev. 1.10 8 May 19, 2017



# **Pin Assignment**



Note: 1. If the pin-shared pin functions have multiple outputs, the desired pin-shared function is determined by corresponding software control bits.

2. The OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins are used as the OCDS dedicated pins.

# **Pin Description**

The function of each pin is listed in the following table, however the details behind how each pin is configured is contained in other sections of the datasheet.

#### BC68F2130

| Pin Name                       | Function | ОРТ                  | I/T | O/T  | Description   |
|--------------------------------|----------|----------------------|-----|------|---|
| PA0/PTPI/PTPB/<br>ICPDA/OCDSDA | PA0      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS0 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |
|                                | PTPI     | PAS0                 | ST  | _    | PTM capture input   |
|                                | PTPB     | PAS0                 | _   | CMOS | PTM inverted output                                       |
|                                | ICPDA    | _                    | ST  | CMOS | ICP Address/Data  |
|                                | OCDSDA   | _                    | ST  | CMOS | OCDS data/address   |
| PA1/PTCK                       | PA1      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS0 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |
|                                | PTCK     | PAS0                 | ST  | _    | PTM clock input   |



# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

| Pin Name             | Function | ОРТ                  | I/T | O/T  | Description   |
|----------------------|----------|----------------------|-----|------|---|
| PA2/PTP/             | PA2      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS0 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |
| ICPCK/ PTP<br>OCDSCK |          | PAS0                 | _   | CMOS | PTM output  |
| OCDSCK               | ICPCK    | _                    | ST  | _    | ICP clock   |
|                      | OCDSCK   | _                    | ST  | _    | OCDS clock  |
| PA3/INT0             | PA3      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS0 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |
|                      | INT0     | PAS0                 | ST  | _    | External interrupt 0 input                                |
| PA4/INT1             | PA4      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS1 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |
|                      | INT1     | PAS1                 | ST  | _    | External interrupt 1 input                                |
| PA5/CTP              | PA5      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS1 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |
|                      | CTP      | PAS1                 | _   | CMOS | CTM output  |
| PB4~PB5              | PBn      | PBPU                 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up             |
| OSC1                 | OSC1     | _                    | HXT | _    | RF oscillator input                                       |
| OSC2                 | OSC2     | _                    | _   | HXT  | RF oscillator output                                      |
| RFOUT                | RFOUT    | _                    | _   | AN   | RF power amplifier output                                 |
| VDD                  | VDD      | _                    | PWR | _    | 3.3V positive power supply                                |
| V15O                 | V15O     | _                    | PWR | _    | Internal 1.5V LDO output                                  |
| VSS                  | VSS      | _                    | PWR | _    | Digital negative power supply                             |
| VDDRF                | VDDRF    | _                    | PWR | _    | RF positive power supply                                  |
| VSSRF_PA             | VSSRF_PA | _                    | PWR | _    | RF power amplifier negative power supply                  |

Legend: I/T: Input type;

O/T: Output type; PWR: Power;

OPT: Optional by register option; ST: Schmitt Trigger input;

CMOS: CMOS output;

AN: Analog signal;

HXT: High frequency crystal oscillator;

# BC68F2140

| Pin Name       | Function | ОРТ                  | I/T | O/T  | Description   |
|----------------|----------|----------------------|-----|------|---|
|                | PA0      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS0 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |
| PA0/PTPI/PTPB/ | PTPI     | PAS0                 | ST  | _    | PTM capture input   |
| ICPDA/OCDSDA   | PTPB     | PAS0                 | _   | CMOS | PTM inverted output                                       |
|                | ICPDA    | _                    | ST  | CMOS | ICP Address/Data  |
|                | OCDSDA   | _                    | ST  | CMOS | OCDS data/address   |
| PA1/PTCK PA1   |          | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS0 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |
|                | PTCK     | PAS0                 | ST  | _    | PTM clock input   |

Rev. 1.10 May 19, 2017



| Pin Name       | Function | ОРТ                  | I/T | O/T  | Description   |  |  |
|----------------|----------|----------------------|-----|------|---|--|--|
| PA2/PTP/ICPCK/ | PA2      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS0 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |  |  |
| OCDSCK         | PTP      | PAS0                 | _   | CMOS | PTM output  |  |  |
|                | ICPCK    | _                    | ST  | _    | ICP clock   |  |  |
|                | OCDSCK   | _                    | ST  | _    | OCDS clock  |  |  |
| PA3/INT0       | PA3      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS0 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |  |  |
|                | INT0     | PAS0                 | ST  | _    | External interrupt 0 input                                |  |  |
| PA4/INT1       | PA4      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS1 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |  |  |
|                | INT1     | PAS1                 | ST  | _    | External interrupt 1 input                                |  |  |
| PA5/CTP        | PA5      | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS1 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |  |  |
|                | CTP      | PAS1                 | _   | CMOS | CTM output  |  |  |
| PA6/CTPB PA6   |          | PAPU<br>PAWU<br>PAS1 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |  |  |
|                | СТРВ     | PAS1                 | _   | CMOS | CTM inverted output                                       |  |  |
| PA7/CTCK       | PA7      | PAPU<br>PAWU         | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up and wake-up |  |  |
|                | CTCK     | _                    | ST  | _    | CTM clock input   |  |  |
| PB0~PB5        | PBn      | PBPU                 | ST  | CMOS | General purpose I/O. Register enabled pull-up             |  |  |
| OSC1           | OSC1     | _                    | HXT | _    | RF oscillator input                                       |  |  |
| OSC2           | OSC2     | _                    | _   | HXT  | RF oscillator output                                      |  |  |
| RFOUT          | RFOUT    | _                    | _   | AN   | RF power amplifier output                                 |  |  |
| VDD            | VDD      | _                    | PWR | _    | 3.3V positive power supply                                |  |  |
| V15O           | V15O     | _                    | PWR | _    | Internal 1.5V LDO output                                  |  |  |
| VSS            | VSS      | _                    | PWR | _    | Digital negative power supply                             |  |  |
| VDDRF          | VDDRF    | _                    | PWR | _    | RF positive power supply                                  |  |  |
| VSSRF          | VSSRF    | _                    | PWR | _    | RF negative power supply                                  |  |  |
| VSSRF_PA       | VSSRF_PA | _                    | PWR | _    | RF power amplifier negative power supply                  |  |  |
| NC             | NC       | —                    | _   | _    | Not connected   |  |  |

Legend: I/T: Input type;

OPT: Optional by register option;

PWR: Power;

ST: Schmitt Trigger input;

CMOS: CMOS output;

O/T: Output type;

AN: Analog signal;

HXT: High frequency crystal oscillator;



# **Absolute Maximum Ratings**

| Supply Voltage          | $V_{SS}$ =0.3V to $V_{SS}$ +3.6V               |
|-------------------------|--|
| Input Voltage           | V <sub>SS</sub> =0.3V to V <sub>DD</sub> +0.3V |
| Storage Temperature     | -50°C to 125°C                                 |
| Operating Temperature   | -40°C to 85°C                                  |
| I <sub>OH</sub> Total   | -80mA  |
| IoL Total               | 80mA   |
| Total Power Dissipation | 500mW  |
| ESD HBM                 | ±2kV   |
| ESD MM                  | ±400V  |

Note: These are stress ratings only. Stresses exceeding the range specified under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause substantial damage to the devices. Functional operation of the devices at other conditions beyond those listed in the specification is not implied and prolonged exposure to extreme conditions may affect device reliability.

The devices are ESD sensitive. HBM (Human Body Mode) is based on MIL-STD-883H Method 3015.8. MM (Machine Mode) is based on JEDEC EIA/JESD22-A115.

# D.C. Characteristics

Ta=25°C

| Cumbal           | Parameter   |                 | Test Conditions  | B.41 | Turn | . Max.      | Unit |
|------------------|---|-----------------|--|------|------|-------------|------|
| Symbol           | Parameter   | V <sub>DD</sub> | Conditions   | Min. | Тур. | wax.        | Unit |
| $V_{DD}$         | MCU Operating Voltage – HXT (RF External Crystal) | _               | $f_{SYS} = f_{HXT} =$ 12/12.8/16/19.2MHz   | 2.0  | _    | 3.6         | ٧    |
|                  | MCU Operating Voltage – HIRC                      | _               | f <sub>SYS</sub> = f <sub>HIRC</sub> = 16MHz                                       | 2.0  | _    | 3.6         | V    |
|                  | MCU Operating Voltage – LIRC                      |                 | $f_{SYS} = f_{LIRC} = 32kHz$   | 2.0  | _    | 3.6         | V    |
| V <sub>150</sub> | LDO Operating Voltage                             | 2.0V~3.6V       | _  | -10% | 1.5  | +10%        | V    |
|                  | Operating Current – LIRC (LCMD=1)                 | 3V              | No load, all peripherals off,<br>$f_{SYS} = f_{LIRC} = 32kHz$ ,<br>RF TX power off | _    | 30   | 50          | μA   |
| Гоо              | Operating Current – LIRC (LCMD=0)                 | 3V              | No load, all peripherals off, $f_{SYS} = f_{LIRC} = 32kHz$ , RF TX power off       | _    | 42   | 70          | μA   |
|                  | Operating Current – HIRC                          | 3V              | No load, all peripherals off,<br>$f_{SYS} = f_{HIRC} = 16MHz$ ,<br>RF TX power off | _    | 0.76 | 1.5         | mA   |
|                  | Operating Current – HXT                           | 3V              | No load, all peripherals off,<br>$f_{SYS} = f_{HXT} = 16MHz$ ,<br>RF TX power off  | _    | 1.1  | 1.6         | mA   |
|                  | Standby Current<br>(Deep Sleep Mode, LDO Off)     | 3V              | No load, all peripherals off, WDT off  | _    | 0.4  | 1.0         | μA   |
| I <sub>STB</sub> | Standby Current (DEEP SLEEP Mode, LDO Off)        | 3V              | No load, all peripherals off, WDT on   | _    | 1.2  | 3           | μA   |
|                  | Standby Current (IDLE1 Mode, LDO On)              | 3V              | No load, all peripherals off, $f_{SUB}$ on, $f_{SYS}$ = $f_{HXT}$ = 16MHz          | _    | 600  | 900         | μA   |
| VII              | Input Low Voltage for I/O Ports                   | 3V              | _  | 0    | _    | 0.9         | V    |
| VIL              | Input Low Voltage for I/O Ports                   | _               | _  | 0    | _    | $0.3V_{DD}$ | \ \  |

Rev. 1.10 12 May 19, 2017



| Symbol          | Dougmatou                          |                        | Test Conditions                     | Min                | Turn | May      | I Imia |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|------|----------|--------|
| Symbol          | Parameter                          | <b>V</b> <sub>DD</sub> | Conditions                          | Min.               | Тур. | Max.     | Unit   |
| V               | Innut Link Valtage for I/O Porte   | 3V                     | _                                   | 2.1                | _    | 3.0      | \/     |
| V <sub>IH</sub> | Input High Voltage for I/O Ports   | _                      | _                                   | $0.7V_{\text{DD}}$ | _    | $V_{DD}$ | V      |
| I <sub>OL</sub> | Sink Current for I/O Ports         | 3V                     | V <sub>OL</sub> =0.1V <sub>DD</sub> | 10                 | 20   | _        | mA     |
| Іон             | Source Current for I/O Ports       | 3V                     | V <sub>OL</sub> =0.9V <sub>DD</sub> | -5                 | -10  | _        | mA     |
| VoL             | Output Low Voltage for I/O Ports   | 3V                     | I <sub>OL</sub> =10mA               | _                  | _    | 0.3      | V      |
| V <sub>OH</sub> | Output High Voltage for I/O Ports  | 3V                     | I <sub>OH</sub> =-5mA               | 2.7                | _    | _        | V      |
| R <sub>PH</sub> | Pull-high Resistance for I/O Ports | 3V                     | _                                   | 20                 | 30   | 60       | kΩ     |

# A.C. Characteristics

Ta=25°C

| 0                 | D   |                 | Test Conditions  | N.4.1 | <b>T</b> | N4   | 1114              |
|-------------------|---|-----------------|--|-------|----------|------|-------------------|
| Symbol            | Parameter   | V <sub>DD</sub> | Conditions   | Min.  | Тур.     | Max. | Unit              |
| _                 | Sysetm Clock – HXT<br>(RF External Crystal)   | 2.0V~3.6V       | f <sub>SYS</sub> = f <sub>HXT</sub> =<br>12/12.8/16/19.2MHz      | 12    | 16       | 19.2 | MHz               |
| f <sub>SYS</sub>  | MCU System Clock – HIRC   | 2.0V~3.6V       | f <sub>SYS</sub> = f <sub>HIRC</sub> = 16MHz                     | _     | 16       | _    | MHz               |
|                   | System Clock – LIRC   | 2.0V~3.6V       | f <sub>SYS</sub> = f <sub>LIRC</sub> = 32kHz                     | _     | 32       | _    | kHz               |
| f <sub>HIRC</sub> | High Speed Internal RC Oscillator   | 3V              | Ta = 25°C  | -2%   | 16       | +2%  | MHz               |
| f <sub>LIRC</sub> | Low Speed Internal RC Oscillator  | 3V              | Ta = 25°C  | -10%  | 32       | +10% | kHz               |
| tint              | External Interrupt Minimum Pulse Width  | _               | _  | 10    | _        | _    | μs                |
| tтск              | xTM xTCK Input Pin Minimum Pulse Width  | _               | _  | 0.3   | _        | _    | μs                |
| tты               | PTM PTPI Input Pin Minimum Pulse<br>Width   | _               | _  | 0.3   | _        | _    | μs                |
|                   | System Start-up Timer Period (Wake-up from halt condition where $f_{\text{SYS}}$ is off)    | _               | f <sub>SYS</sub> = f <sub>HXT</sub> ~ f <sub>HXT</sub> / 64      | 128   | _        | _    | t <sub>HXT</sub>  |
|                   |   | _               | f <sub>SYS</sub> = f <sub>HIRC</sub> ~ f <sub>HIRC</sub> / 64    | 16    | _        | _    | t <sub>HIRC</sub> |
|                   |   | _               | f <sub>SYS</sub> = f <sub>LIRC</sub>                             | 2     | _        | _    | tsuB              |
|                   | System Start-up Timer Period (Wake-up from halt condition where                             | _               | $f_{SYS} = f_H \sim f_H / 64$ ,<br>$f_H = f_{HXT}$ or $f_{HIRC}$ | 2     | _        | _    | t <sub>H</sub>    |
| tsst              | f <sub>SYS</sub> is on)   | _               | f <sub>SYS</sub> = f <sub>LIRC</sub>                             | 2     | _        | _    | tsuB              |
|                   | System Start-up Timer Period  | _               | $f_{HXT}$ off $\rightarrow$ on (HXTF = 1)                        | 1024  | _        | _    | t <sub>HXT</sub>  |
|                   | (Slow mode $\leftrightarrow$ Normal mode or $f_H = f_{HIRC} \leftrightarrow f_{HXT}$ )      | _               | $f_{\text{HIRC}}$ off $\rightarrow$ on (HIRCF = 1)               | 16    | _        | _    | t <sub>HIRC</sub> |
|                   | System Start-up Timer Period (WDT Time-out Hardware Reset)                                  | _               | _  | 0     | _        | _    | t <sub>H</sub>    |
| t <sub>RSTD</sub> | System Reset Delay Time (Power-on Reset, LVR Hardware Reset, LVRC/WDTC/RSTC Software Reset) | _               | _  | 25    | 50       | 100  | ms                |
|                   | System Reset Delay Time<br>(WDT Hardware Reset)   | _               | _  | 8.3   | 16.7     | 33.3 | ms                |
| tsreset           | Minimum Software Reset Width to Reset   | _               | _  | 45    | 90       | 120  | μs                |



# **LVD/LVR Electrical Characteristics**

Ta=25°C

| Symbol            | Parameter                              |                                 | Test Conditions                           | Min.    | Tun  | Max.   | Unit  |  |
|-------------------|--|---------------------------------|---|---------|------|--------|-------|--|
| Symbol            |  |                                 | Conditions                                | IVIIII. | тур. | IVIAX. | Ullit |  |
| V <sub>LVR</sub>  | Low Voltage Reset Voltage              | _                               | LVR enable, voltage select 1.9V           | -0.1    | 1.9  | +0.1   | V     |  |
|                   |  | -                               | LVD enable, voltage select 1.9V           | -0.1    | 1.9  | +0.1   |       |  |
|                   |  | _                               | LVD enable, voltage select 2.0V           |         | 2.0  |        |       |  |
|                   |  | _                               | LVD enable, voltage select 2.2V           |         | 2.2  |        |       |  |
| \/                | Low Voltage Detection Voltage          | _                               | LVD enable, voltage select 2.4V           |         | 2.4  | .4     | V     |  |
| V <sub>LVD</sub>  | Low Voltage Detection Voltage          | _                               | LVD enable, voltage select 2.8V -5% 2.8   |         | +5%  | V      |       |  |
|                   |  | _                               | LVD enable, voltage select 2.9V           |         | 2.9  |        |       |  |
|                   |  | LVD enable, voltage select 3.0V |   |         | 3.0  | 3.0    |       |  |
|                   |  | _                               | LVD enable, voltage select 3.3V           |         | 3.3  |        |       |  |
| I <sub>OP</sub>   | Operating Current                      | 3V                              | LVD enable, LVR enable                    | _       | 25   | 35     | μA    |  |
| 4                 | LVDO Stoble Time                       | _                               | For LVR enable, LVD off $\rightarrow$ on  | _       | _    | 15     | μs    |  |
| t <sub>LVDS</sub> | LVDO Stable Time                       | _                               | For LVR disable, LVD off $\rightarrow$ on | _       | _    | 150    | μs    |  |
| t <sub>LVR</sub>  | Minimum Low Voltage Width to Reset     | _                               | _   | 120     | 240  | 480    | μs    |  |
| t <sub>LVD</sub>  | Minimum Low Voltage Width to Interrupt | _                               | _   | 60      | 120  | 240    | μs    |  |

# **RF Transmitter Electrical Characteristics**

Ta=25°C

| Cumbal             | Parameter                   |                        | Test Conditions   | Min.   | Turn | Max. | Unit  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|---|--------|------|------|-------|
| Symbol             | Parameter                   | <b>V</b> <sub>DD</sub> | Conditions  | WIIII. | Тур. | wax. | Oilit |
| $V_{\text{DDRF}}$  | RF Operating Voltage        | _                      | _   | 2.0    | 3.0  | 3.6  | V     |
| I <sub>STBRF</sub> | RF Power-down Current       | _                      | _   | _      | _    | 1    | μΑ    |
| f <sub>XTAL</sub>  | RF Operating XTAL           | _                      | _   | 12     | 16   | 19.2 | MHz   |
| f <sub>XTALV</sub> | RF Operating XTAL Variation | _                      | _   | -20    | _    | +20  | ppm   |
| fop                | RF Operating Frequency      | _                      | _   | 315    | _    | 915  | MHz   |
| f <sub>FSK</sub>   | FSK Frequency Deviation     | _                      | _   | 10     | _    | 150  | kHz   |
| £                  | DE Fraguency Ston           | _                      | f <sub>OP</sub> = 315/433MHz                              | _      | _    | 50   | Hz    |
| f <sub>STEP</sub>  | RF Frequency Step           | _                      | f <sub>OP</sub> = 868/915MHz                              | _      | _    | 100  | ПZ    |
| R <sub>FSK</sub>   | Air Data Rate (FSK)         | _                      |   |        | _    | 100  | Kbps  |
| Rook               | Air Data Rate (OOK)         | _                      |   |        | _    | 25   | Kbps  |
| P <sub>RF</sub>    | Output Power                | 3.0V                   | _   |        | 10   | 13   | dBm   |
|                    | Outrot Device Verieties     | 2.0V~3.3V              | $P_{RF} = 10 dBm (f_{OP} = 433 MHz)$                      | _      | _    | 6    | dB    |
| P <sub>RFV</sub>   | Output Power Variation      | 2.5V~3.3V              | $P_{RF} = 10dBm (f_{OP} = 433MHz)$                        | _      | _    | 3    | dB    |
|                    |                             | 3.0V                   | $P_{RF} = 0 dBm$<br>( $f_{OP} = 315/433MHz$ )             | _      | 12   | _    | mA    |
|                    |                             | 3.0V                   | $P_{RF} = 10 dBm$<br>( $f_{OP} = 315/433 MHz$ )           | _      | 18   | _    | mA    |
|                    | Transmitter Operating       | 3.0V                   | $P_{RF} = 13 dBm$<br>( $f_{OP} = 315/433 MHz$ )           | _      | 25   | _    | mA    |
| I <sub>DDTX</sub>  | Current                     | 3.0V                   | $P_{RF} = 0 dBm$<br>( $f_{OP} = 868/915MHz$ )             | _      | 13   | _    | mA    |
|                    |                             | 3.0V                   | $P_{RF} = 10 dBm$<br>( $f_{OP} = 868/915 MHz$ )           | _      | 22   | _    | mA    |
|                    |                             | 3.0V                   | P <sub>RF</sub> = 13dBm<br>(f <sub>OP</sub> = 868/915MHz) |        | 28   |      | mA    |

Rev. 1.10 14 May 19, 2017

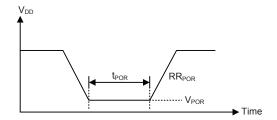


| Symbol | Parameter   |                        | Test Conditions   | Min.    | Tun  | Max.   | Unit   |  |
|--------|---|------------------------|---|---------|------|--------|--------|--|
| Symbol | Parameter   | <b>V</b> <sub>DD</sub> | Conditions  | IVIIII. | Тур. | IVIAX. | Offic  |  |
| PNTX   | Transmitter Dhase Noise                             | _                      | P <sub>RF</sub> = 10dBm,<br>100kHz from Carrier   | _       | _    | -80    | dBc/Hz |  |
| PINTX  | Transmitter Phase Noise                             | _                      | P <sub>RF</sub> = 10dBm,<br>1MHz from Carrier   | _       | _    | -100   | dBc/Hz |  |
|        | Transmitter Spurious                                | _                      | f < 1GHz  | _       | _    | -36    | dBm    |  |
| SETX   |   | _                      | 47MHz < f < 74MHz,<br>87.5MHz < f < 118MHz,<br>174MHz < f < 230MHz,<br>470MHz < f < 790MHz, | _       |      | -54    | dBm    |  |
| JOE IX | (P <sub>RF</sub> = 10dBm, f <sub>OP</sub> = 433MHz) | _                      | 2 <sup>nd</sup> Harmonic  | _       |      | -30    | dBm    |  |
|        |   | _                      | 3 <sup>rd</sup> Harmonic  | _       | _    | -30    | dBm    |  |
|        |   | _                      | 2 <sup>nd</sup> Harmonic (other frequency)  | _       |      | -30    | dBm    |  |
|        |   | _                      | 3 <sup>rd</sup> Harmonic (other frequency)  | _       | _    | -30    | dBm    |  |

# **Power-on Reset Characteristics**

Ta=25°C

| Symbol            | Parameter   |   | est Conditions | Min.    | Typ. | Max.   | Unit  |
|-------------------|---|---|----------------|---------|------|--------|-------|
| Syllibol          |   |   | Conditions     | IVIIII. | Typ. | IVIAX. | Oilit |
| V <sub>POR</sub>  | V <sub>DD</sub> Start Voltage to Ensure Power-on Reset                              | _ | _              | _       | _    | 100    | mV    |
| RR <sub>POR</sub> | V <sub>DD</sub> Rising Rate to Ensure Power-on Reset                                |   | _              | 0.035   | _    | _      | V/ms  |
| t <sub>POR</sub>  | Minimum Time for V <sub>DD</sub> Stays at V <sub>POR</sub> to Ensure Power-on Reset | _ | _              | 1       | _    | _      | ms    |





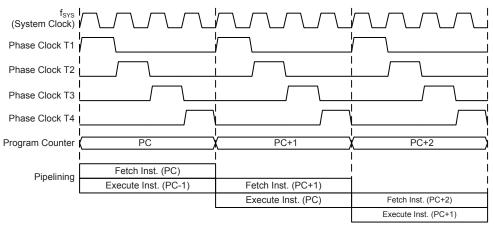
## **System Architecture**

A key factor in the high-performance features of the Holtek range of microcontrollers is attributed to their internal system architecture. The range of the device take advantage of the usual features found within RISC microcontrollers providing increased speed of operation and enhanced performance. The pipelining scheme is implemented in such a way that instruction fetching and instruction execution are overlapped, hence instructions are effectively executed in one or two cycles for most of the standard or extended instructions respectively, with the exception of branch or call instructions which need one more cycle. An 8-bit wide ALU is used in practically all instruction set operations, which carries out arithmetic operations, logic operations, rotation, increment, decrement, branch decisions, etc. The internal data path is simplified by moving data through the Accumulator and the ALU. Certain internal registers are implemented in the Data Memory and can be directly or indirectly addressed. The simple addressing methods of these registers along with additional architectural features ensure that a minimum of external components is required to provide a functional I/O control system with maximum reliability and flexibility. This makes the device suitable for low-cost, high-volume production for controller applications.

#### Clocking and Pipelining

The main system clock, derived from either a HXT, HIRC or LIRC oscillator is subdivided into four internally generated non-overlapping clocks, T1~T4. The Program Counter is incremented at the beginning of the T1 clock during which time a new instruction is fetched. The remaining T2~T4 clocks carry out the decoding and execution functions. In this way, one T1~T4 clock cycle forms one instruction cycle. Although the fetching and execution of instructions takes place in consecutive instruction cycles, the pipelining structure of the microcontroller ensures that instructions are effectively executed in one instruction cycle. The exception to this are instructions where the contents of the Program Counter are changed, such as subroutine calls or jumps, in which case the instruction will take one more instruction cycle to execute.

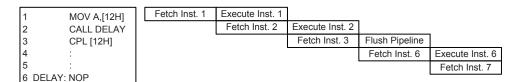
For instructions involving branches, such as jump or call instructions, two machine cycles are required to complete instruction execution. An extra cycle is required as the program takes one cycle to first obtain the actual jump or call address and then another cycle to actually execute the branch. The requirement for this extra cycle should be taken into account by programmers in timing sensitive applications.



**System Clocking and Pipelining** 

Rev. 1.10 16 May 19, 2017





Instruction Fetching

## **Program Counter**

During program execution, the Program Counter is used to keep track of the address of the next instruction to be executed. It is automatically incremented by one each time an instruction is executed except for instructions, such as "JMP" or "CALL" that demand a jump to a non-consecutive Program Memory address. Only the lower 8 bits, known as the Program Counter Low Register, are directly addressable by the application program.

When executing instructions requiring jumps to non-consecutive addresses such as a jump instruction, a subroutine call, interrupt or reset, etc., the microcontroller manages program control by loading the required address into the Program Counter. For conditional skip instructions, once the condition has been met, the next instruction, which has already been fetched during the present instruction execution, is discarded and a dummy cycle takes its place while the correct instruction is obtained.

| Device    | Program Counter           |              |  |  |  |  |
|-----------|---------------------------|--------------|--|--|--|--|
| Device    | Program Counter High Byte | PCL Register |  |  |  |  |
| BC68F2130 | PC10~PC8                  | PCL7~PCL0    |  |  |  |  |
| BC68F2140 | PC11~PC8                  | PCL7~PCL0    |  |  |  |  |

**Program Counter** 

The lower byte of the Program Counter, known as the Program Counter Low register or PCL, is available for program control and is a readable and writeable register. By transferring data directly into this register, a short program jump can be executed directly; however, as only this low byte is available for manipulation, the jumps are limited to the present page of memory that is 256 locations. When such program jumps are executed it should also be noted that a dummy cycle will be inserted. Manipulating the PCL register may cause program branching, so an extra cycle is needed to pre-fetch.

#### Stack

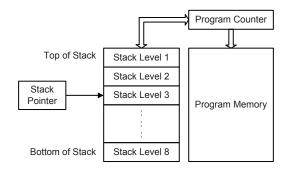
This is a special part of the memory which is used to save the contents of the Program Counter only. The stack has multiple levels and is neither part of the data nor part of the program space, and is neither readable nor writeable. The activated level is indexed by the Stack Pointer, and is neither readable nor writeable. At a subroutine call or interrupt acknowledge signal, the contents of the Program Counter are pushed onto the stack. At the end of a subroutine or an interrupt routine, signaled by a return instruction, RET or RETI, the Program Counter is restored to its previous value from the stack. After a device reset, the Stack Pointer will point to the top of the stack.

If the stack is full and an enabled interrupt takes place, the interrupt request flag will be recorded but the acknowledge signal will be inhibited. When the Stack Pointer is decremented, by RET or RETI, the interrupt will be serviced. This feature prevents stack overflow allowing the programmer to use the structure more easily. However, when the stack is full, a CALL subroutine instruction can still be executed which will result in a stack overflow. Precautions should be taken to avoid such cases which might cause unpredictable program branching.

If the stack is overflow, the first Program Counter save in the stack will be lost.

Rev. 1.10 17 May 19, 2017





## Arithmetic and Logic Unit - ALU

The arithmetic-logic unit or ALU is a critical area of the microcontroller that carries out arithmetic and logic operations of the instruction set. Connected to the main microcontroller data bus, the ALU receives related instruction codes and performs the required arithmetic or logical operations after which the result will be placed in the specified register. As these ALU calculation or operations may result in carry, borrow or other status changes, the status register will be correspondingly updated to reflect these changes. The ALU supports the following functions:

- Arithmetic operations:
   ADD, ADDM, ADC, ADCM, SUB, SUBM, SBC, SBCM, DAA,
   LADD, LADDM, LADC, LADCM, LSUB, LSUBM, LSBC, LSBCM, LDAA
- Logic operations:
   AND, OR, XOR, ANDM, ORM, XORM, CPL, CPLA,
   LAND, LANDM, LOR, LORM, LXOR, LXORM, LCPL, LCPLA
- Rotation:
   RRA, RR, RRCA, RRC, RLA, RL, RLCA, RLC,
   LRR, LRRA, LRRCA, LRRC, LRLA, LRL, LRLCA, LRLC
- Increment and Decrement: INCA, INC, DECA, DEC, LINCA, LINC, LDECA, LDEC
- Branch decision:
   JMP, SZ, SZA, SNZ, SIZ, SDZ, SIZA, SDZA, CALL, RET, RETI, LSNZ, LSZ, LSZA, LSIZ, LSIZA, LSDZ, LSDZA

Rev. 1.10 18 May 19, 2017



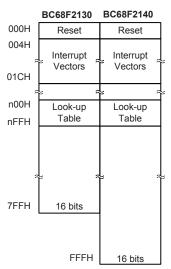
## **Flash Program Memory**

The Program Memory is the location where the user code or program is stored. For the devices the Program Memory is Flash type, which means it can be programmed and re-programmed a large number of times, allowing the user the convenience of code modification on the same device. By using the appropriate programming tools, the Flash devices offer users the flexibility to conveniently debug and develop their applications while also offering a means of field programming and updating.

#### **Structure**

The Program Memory has a capacity of  $2K\times16$  to  $4K\times16$  bits. The Program Memory is addressed by the Program Counter and also contains data, table information and interrupt entries. Table data, which can be setup in any location within the Program Memory, is addressed by a separate table pointer register.

| Device    | Capacity |
|-----------|----------|
| BC68F2130 | 2K×16    |
| BC68F2140 | 4K×16    |



**Program Memory Structure** 

#### **Special Vectors**

Within the Program Memory, certain locations are reserved for the reset and interrupts. The location 000H is reserved for use by the device reset for program initialisation. After a device reset is initiated, the program will jump to this location and begin execution.

## Look-up Table

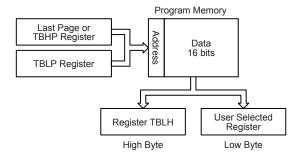
Any location within the Program Memory can be defined as a look-up table where programmers can store fixed data. To use the look-up table, the table pointer must first be setup by placing the address of the look up data to be retrieved in the table pointer registers, TBLP and TBHP. These registers define the total address of the look-up table.

Rev. 1.10 19 May 19, 2017

## BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

After setting up the table pointer, the table data can be retrieved from the Program Memory using the corresponding table read instruction such as "TABRD [m]" or "TABRDL [m]" respectively when the memory [m] is located in sector 0. If the memory [m] is located in other sectors, the data can be retrieved from the program memory using the corresponding extended table read instruction such as "LTABRD [m]" or "LTABRDL [m]" respectively. When the instruction is executed, the lower order table byte from the Program Memory will be transferred to the user defined Data Memory register [m] as specified in the instruction. The higher order table data byte from the Program Memory will be transferred to the TBLH special register.

The accompanying diagram illustrates the addressing data flow of the look-up table.



## **Table Program Example**

The following example shows how the table pointer and table data is defined and retrieved from the microcontroller. This example uses raw table data located in the Program Memory which is stored there using the ORG statement. The value at this ORG statement is "700H" which refers to the start address of the last page within the 2K words Program Memory of the BC68F2130. The table pointer low byte register is setup here to have an initial value of "06H". This will ensure that the first data read from the data table will be at the Program Memory address "706H" or 6 locations after the start of the last page. Note that the value for the table pointer is referenced to the first address of the specific page pointed by the TBHP register if the "TABRD [m]" instruction is being used. The high byte of the table data which in this case is equal to zero will be transferred to the TBLH register automatically when the "TABRD [m]" instruction is executed.

Because the TBLH register is a read/write register and can be restored, care should be taken to ensure its protection if both the main routine and Interrupt Service Routine use table read instructions. If using the table read instructions, the Interrupt Service Routines may change the value of the TBLH and subsequently cause errors if used again by the main routine. As a rule it is recommended that simultaneous use of the table read instructions should be avoided. However, in situations where simultaneous use cannot be avoided, the interrupts should be disabled prior to the execution of any main routine table-read instructions. Note that all table related instructions require two instruction cycles to complete their operation.

Rev. 1.10 20 May 19, 2017



#### **Table Read Program Example**

```
ds .section 'data'
tempreg1 db?
                         ; temporary register #1
tempreg2 db?
                        ; temporary register #2
code0 .section 'code'
                         ; initialise low table pointer - note that this address is
mov a,06h
                         ; referenced
mov tblp,a
                         ; to the last page or the page that thhp pointed
mov a,07h
                         ; initialise high table pointer
mov tbhp, a
                         ; it is not necessary to set thhp if executing tabrdl
tabrd tempreg1
                         ; transfers value in table referenced by table pointer
                         ; data at program memory address "706H" transferred to tempreg1
                         ; and TBLH
dec tblp
                         ; reduce value of table pointer by one
tabrd tempreg2
                         ; transfers value in table referenced by table pointer
                         ; data at program memory address "705H" transferred to tempreg2
                         ; and TBLH in this example the data "1AH" is transferred to
                          ; tempreg1 and data "OFH" to tempreg2 the value "OOH" will be
                          ; transferred to the high byte register TBLH
:
org 700h
                          ; sets initial address of last page
dc 00Ah,00Bh,00Ch,00Dh,00Eh,00Fh,01Ah,01Bh
```

## In Circuit Programming - ICP

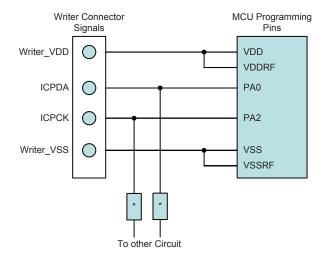
The provision of Flash type Program Memory provides the user with a means of convenient and easy upgrades and modifications to their programs on the same device.

As an additional convenience, Holtek has provided a means of programming the microcontroller incircuit using a 4-pin interface. This provides manufacturers with the possibility of manufacturing their circuit boards complete with a programmed or un-programmed microcontroller, and then programming or upgrading the program at a later stage. This enables product manufacturers to easily keep their manufactured products supplied with the latest program releases without removal and reinsertion of the device.

| Holtek Writer Pins | MCU Programming Pins | Pin Description                 |
|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| ICPDA              | PA0                  | Programming Serial Data/Address |
| ICPCK              | PA2                  | Programming Clock               |
| VDD                | VDD&VDDRF            | Power Supply (3V)               |
| VSS                | VSS&VSSRF            | Ground                          |

The Program Memory can be programmed serially in-circuit using this 4-wire interface. Data is downloaded and uploaded serially on a single pin with an additional line for the clock. Two additional lines are required for the power supply. The technical details regarding the incircuit programming of the device is beyond the scope of this document and will be supplied in supplementary literature.

During the programming process, the user must take care of the ICPDA and ICPCK pins for data and clock programming purposes to ensure that no other outputs are connected to these two pins.



Note: \* may be resistor or capacitor. The resistance of \* must be greater than  $1k\Omega$  or the capacitance of \* must be less than 1nF.

#### On-Chip Debug Support - OCDS

The devices also provide an "On-Chip Debug" function to debug the MCU during the development process. Users can use the OCDS function to emulate the device behavior by connecting the OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins to the Holtek HT-IDE development tools. The OCDSDA pin is the OCDS Data/Address input/output pin while the OCDSCK pin is the OCDS clock input pin. When users use the OCDS function for debugging, other functions which are shared with the OCDSDA and OCDSCK pins in the device will have no effect. However, the two OCDS pins which are pin-shared with the ICP programming pins are still used as the Flash Memory programming pins for ICP. For more detailed OCDS information, refer to the corresponding document named "Holtek e-Link for 8-bit MCU OCDS User's Guide".

| Holtek e-Link Pins | MCU Chip Pins | Pin Description                                 |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| OCDSDA             | OCDSDA        | On-Chip Debug Support Data/Address input/output |
| OCDSCK             | OCDSCK        | On-Chip Debug Support Clock input               |
| VDD                | VDD           | Power Supply                                    |
| VSS                | VSS           | Ground  |

#### In Application Programming - IAP

The device offers IAP function to update data or application program to Flash ROM. Users can define any ROM location for IAP, but there are some features which user must notice in using IAP function.

| BC68F2130 C                   | onfigurations               | BC68F2140 Configurations |                   |  |  |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|--|--|
| Erase Block 256 words / block |                             | Erase Block              | 256 words / block |  |  |
| Writing Word                  | Writing Word 4 words / time |                          | 4 words / time    |  |  |
| Reading Word                  | Reading Word 1 word / time  |                          | 1 word / time     |  |  |

## **In Application Programming Control Registers**

The Address registers, FARL and FARH, and the Data registers, FD0L/FD0H, FD1L/FD1H, FD2L/FD2H, FD3L/FD3H, together with the Control registers, FC0 and FC1, located in Data Memory Sector 0, are the corresponding Flash access registers for IAP. All read and write operations to the registers can be performed using the direct addressing access.

Rev. 1.10 22 May 19, 2017



| Do wieten Neme   | Bit   |       |       |       |       |     |       |     |  |  |  |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-------|-----|--|--|--|
| Register Name    | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2   | 1     | 0   |  |  |  |
| FC0              | CFWEN | FMOD2 | FMOD1 | FMOD0 | FWPEN | FWT | FRDEN | FRD |  |  |  |
| FC1              | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3    | D2  | D1    | D0  |  |  |  |
| FARL             | A7    | A6    | A5    | A4    | A3    | A2  | A1    | A0  |  |  |  |
| FARH (BC68F2130) | _     | _     | _     | _     | _     | A10 | A9    | A8  |  |  |  |
| FARH (BC68F2140) | _     | _     | _     | _     | A11   | A10 | A9    | A8  |  |  |  |
| FD0L             | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3    | D2  | D1    | D0  |  |  |  |
| FD0H             | D15   | D14   | D13   | D12   | D11   | D10 | D9    | D8  |  |  |  |
| FD1L             | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3    | D2  | D1    | D0  |  |  |  |
| FD1H             | D15   | D14   | D13   | D12   | D11   | D10 | D9    | D8  |  |  |  |
| FD2L             | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3    | D2  | D1    | D0  |  |  |  |
| FD2H             | D15   | D14   | D13   | D12   | D11   | D10 | D9    | D8  |  |  |  |
| FD3L             | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3    | D2  | D1    | D0  |  |  |  |
| FD3H             | D15   | D14   | D13   | D12   | D11   | D10 | D9    | D8  |  |  |  |

**IAP Registers List** 

#### FC0 Register

| Bit  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2   | 1     | 0   |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-------|-----|
| Name | CFWEN | FMOD2 | FMOD1 | FMOD0 | FWPEN | FWT | FRDEN | FRD |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W | R/W   | R/W |
| POR  | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0   | 0     | 0   |

Bit 7 **CFWEN**: Flash Memory Write enable control

0: Flash Memory write function is disabled

1: Flash Memory write function has been successfully enabled

When this bit is cleared to 0 by application program, the Flash Memory write function is disabled. Note that writing a "1" into this bit results in no action. This bit is used to indicate that the Flash Memory write function status. When this bit is set to 1 by hardware, it means that the Flash Memory write function is enabled successfully. Otherwise, the Flash Memory write function is disabled as the bit content is zero.

#### Bit 6~4 **FMOD2~FMOD0**: Mode selection

000: Write Program Memory

001: Block erase Program Memory

010: Reserved

011: Read Program Memory

100: Reserved 101: Reserved

110: FWEN mode – Flash Memory write function enable mode

111: Reserved

## Bit 3 **FWPEN**: Flash Memory Write procedure enable control

0: Disable

1: Enable

When this bit is set to 1 and the FMOD field is set to "110", the IAP controller will execute the "Flash memory write function enable" procedure. Once the Flash memory write function is successfully enabled, it is not necessary to set the FWPEN bit any more.

## Bit 2 FWT: Flash ROM write control bit

0: Do not initiate Flash Memory write or Flash Memory write process is completed

1: Initiate Flash Memory write process

This bit can be set by software only, when the write process is completed, hardware will clear the FWT bit.



# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

Bit 1 FRDEN: Flash Memory read enabled bit

0: Flash Memory read disable1: Flash Memory read enable

Bit 0 FRD: Flash Memory read control bit

0: Do not initiate Flash Memory read or Flash Memory read process is completed

1: Initiate Flash Memory read process

This bit can be set by software only, when the read process is completed, hardware will clear the FRD bit.

#### FC1 Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D7  | D6  | D5  | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit  $7 \sim 0$  **D7\simD0**: whole chip reset

When user writes a specific value of "55H" to this register, it will generate a reset signal to reset whole chip.

# FARL Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | A7  | A6  | A5  | A4  | А3  | A2  | A1  | A0  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 A7~A0: Flash Memory Address [7:0]

#### • FARH Register - BC68F2130

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | A10 | A9  | A8  |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2~0 A10~A8: Flash Memory Address [10:8]

## • FARH Register - BC68F2140

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|---|---|---|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | A11 | A10 | A9  | A8  |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~0 A11~A8: Flash Memory Address [11:8]

#### FD0L Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D7  | D6  | D5  | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit  $7 \sim 0$  **D7\simD0**: The first Flash Memory data [7:0]

Rev. 1.10 24 May 19, 2017



## • FD0H Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9  | D8  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: The first Flash Memory data [15:8]

## • FD1L Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D7  | D6  | D5  | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: The second Flash Memory data [7:0]

## • FD1H Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9  | D8  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: The second Flash Memory data [15:8]

## • FD2L Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D7  | D6  | D5  | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: The third Flash Memory data [7:0]

## • FD2H Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9  | D8  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: The third Flash Memory data [15:8]

## • FD3L Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D7  | D6  | D5  | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: The fourth Flash Memory data [7:0]

## FD3H Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D15 | D14 | D13 | D12 | D11 | D10 | D9  | D8  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

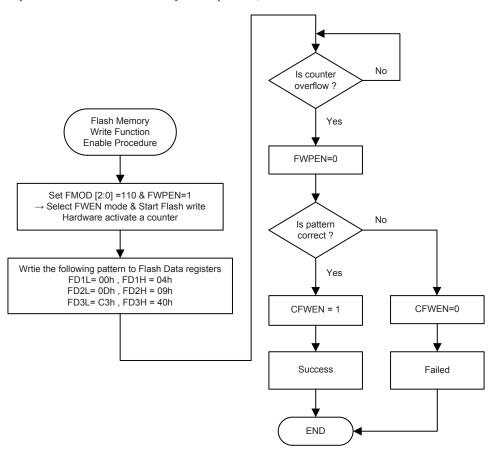
Bit 7~0 **D15~D8**: The fourth Flash Memory data [15:8]



#### Flash Memory Write Function Enable Procedure

In order to allow users to change the Flash Memory data through the IAP control registers, users must first enable the Flash Memory write operation by the following procedure:

- Step 1. Write "110" into the FMOD2~FMOD0 bits to select the FWEN mode.
- Step 2. Set the FWPEN bit to "1". The step 1 and step 2 can be executed simultaneously.
- Step 3. The pattern data with a sequence of 00H, 04H, 0DH, 09H, C3H and 40H must be written into the FD1L, FD1H, FD2L, FD2H, FD3L and FD3H registers respectively.
- Step 4. A counter with a time-out period of  $300\mu s$  will be activated to allow users writing the correct pattern data into the FD1L/FD1H~FD3L/FD3H register pairs. The counter clock is derived from the  $f_{SUB}$  clock.
- Step 5. If the counter overflows or the pattern data is incorrect, the Flash Memory write operation will not be enabled and users must again repeat the above procedure. Then the FWPEN bit will be automatically cleared to 0 by hardware.
- Step 6. If the pattern data is correct before the counter overflows, the Flash Memory write operation will be enabled and the FWPEN bit will automatically be cleared to 0 by hardware. The CFWEN bit will also be set to 1 by hardware to indicate that the Flash Memory write operation is successfully enabled.
- Step 7. Once the Flash Memory write operation is enabled, the user can change the Flash Memory data through the Flash control register.
- Step 8. To disable the Flash Memory write operation, the user can clear the CFWEN bit to 0.



Flash Memory Write Function Enable Procedure

Rev. 1.10 26 May 19, 2017



#### Flash Memory Read/Write Procedure

After the Flash Memory write function is successfully enabled through the preceding IAP procedure, users must first erase the corresponding Flash Memory block and then initiate the Flash Memory write operation. For the devices the number of the block erase operation is 256 words per block, the available block erase address is only specified by FARH register and the content in the FARL register is not used to specify the block address.

| Erase Block | FARH [2:0] | FARL [7:0] |  |  |
|-------------|------------|------------|--|--|
| 0           | 0000 0000  | XXXX XXXX  |  |  |
| 1           | 0000 0001  | XXXX XXXX  |  |  |
| 2           | 0000 0010  | XXXX XXXX  |  |  |
| 3           | 0000 0011  | XXXX XXXX  |  |  |
| 4           | 0000 0100  | XXXX XXXX  |  |  |
| 5           | 0000 0101  | XXXX XXXX  |  |  |
| 6           | 0000 0110  | XXXX XXXX  |  |  |
| 7           | 0000 0111  | XXXX XXXX  |  |  |

"x": don't care

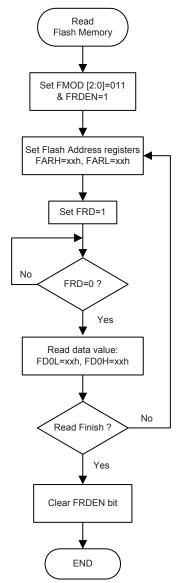
BC68F2130 Erase Block Number and Selection

| Erase Block | FARH [3:0] | FARL [7:0] |
|-------------|------------|------------|
| 0           | 0000 0000  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 1           | 0000 0001  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 2           | 0000 0010  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 3           | 0000 0011  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 4           | 0000 0100  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 5           | 0000 0101  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 6           | 0000 0110  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 7           | 0000 0111  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 8           | 0000 1000  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 9           | 0000 1001  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 10          | 0000 1010  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 11          | 0000 1011  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 12          | 0000 1100  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 13          | 0000 1101  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 14          | 0000 1110  | XXXX XXXX  |
| 15          | 0000 1111  | XXXX XXXX  |

"x": don't care

BC68F2140 Erase Block Number and Selection

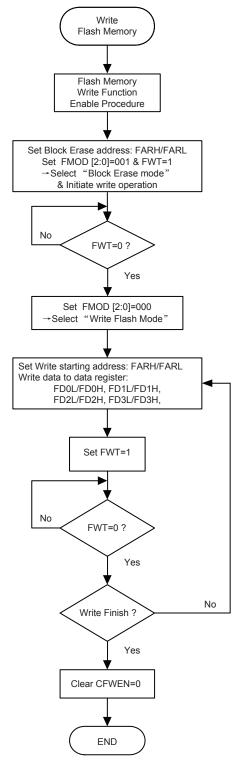




**Read Flash Memory Procedure** 

Rev. 1.10 28 May 19, 2017





Write Flash Memory Procedure

Note: When the FWT or FRD bit is set to 1, the MCU is stopped.



## **Data Memory**

The Data Memory is a volatile area of 8-bit wide RAM internal memory and is the location where temporary information is stored.

Categorized into two types, the first of these is an area of RAM, known as the Special Function Data Memory. These registers have fixed locations and are necessary for correct operation of the devices. Many of these registers can be read from and written to directly under program control, however, some remain protected from user manipulation. The second area of Data Memory is known as the General Purpose Data Memory, which is reserved for general purpose use. All locations within this area are read and write accessible under program control.

Switching between the different Data Memory sectors is achieved by properly setting the Memory Pointers to correct value when using the indirect addressing access.

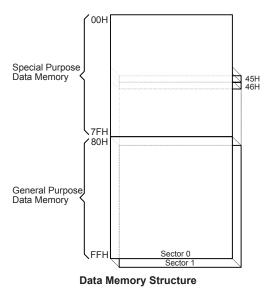
#### **Structure**

The Data Memory is subdivided into several sectors, all of which are implemented in 8-bit wide Memory. Each of the Data Memory Sectors is categorized into two types, the special Purpose Data Memory and the General Purpose Data Memory.

The address range of the Special Purpose Data Memory for the device is from 00H to 7FH while the General Purpose Data Memory address range is from 80H to FFH.

| Device                 | Special Purpose<br>Data Memory | General Purpose<br>Data Memory |                          |  |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
|                        | Located Sectors                | Capacity                       | Sector: Address          |  |
| BC68F2130<br>BC68F2140 | 0, 1                           | 256×8                          | 0: 80H~FFH<br>1: 80H~FFH |  |

## **Data Memory Summary**



Rev. 1.10 30 May 19, 2017



## **Data Memory Addressing**

For the devices that support the extended instructions, there is no Bank Pointer for Data Memory. For Data Memory the desired Sector is pointed by the MP1H or MP2H register and the certain Data Memory address in the selected sector is specified by the MP1L or MP2L register when using indirect addressing access.

Direct Addressing can be used in all sectors using the extended instructions which can address all available data memory space. For the accessed data memory which is located in any data memory sectors except sector 0, the extended instructions can be used to access the data memory instead of using the indirect addressing access. The main difference between standard instructions and extended instructions is that the data memory address "m" in the extended instructions has 9 valid bits for these devices, the high byte indicates a sector and the low byte indicates a specific address.

#### **General Purpose Data Memory**

All microcontroller programs require an area of read/write memory where temporary data can be stored and retrieved for use later. It is this area of RAM memory that is known as General Purpose Data Memory. This area of Data Memory is fully accessible by the user programing for both reading and writing operations. By using the bit operation instructions individual bits can be set or reset under program control giving the user a large range of flexibility for bit manipulation in the Data Memory.

#### **Special Purpose Data Memory**

This area of Data Memory is where registers, necessary for the correct operation of the microcontroller, are stored. Most of the registers are both readable and writeable but some are protected and are readable only, the details of which are located under the relevant Special Function Register section. Note that for locations that are unused, any read instruction to these addresses will return the value "00H".



|     | Sector 0     | Sector 1   |     | Sector 0   | Sector 1          |
|-----|--------------|------------|-----|--|-------------------|
| 00H | IAR0         | OCCIOI I   | 40H | FC0  | OCCIOI 1          |
| 01H | MP0          |            | 41H | FC1  |                   |
| 02H | IAR1         |            | 42H |  |                   |
| 03H | MP1L         |            | 43H | FARL   |                   |
| 04H | MP1H         |            | 44H | FARH   |                   |
| 05H | ACC          |            | 45H | FD0L   | PAS0              |
| 06H | PCL          |            | 46H | FD0H   | PAS1              |
| 07H | TBLP         |            | 47H | FD1L   |                   |
| 08H | TBLH         |            | 48H | FD1H   |                   |
| 09H | TBHP         |            | 49H | FD2L   |                   |
| 0AH | STATUS       |            | 4AH | FD2H   |                   |
| 0BH |              |            | 4BH | FD3L   |                   |
| 0CH | IAR2         |            | 4CH | FD3H   |                   |
| 0DH | MP2L         |            | 4DH |  |                   |
| 0EH | MP2H         |            | 4EH |  |                   |
| 0FH | RSTFC        |            | 4FH | MFI2   |                   |
| 10H | INTC0        |            | 50H | RF OPER  |                   |
| 11H | INTC1        |            | 51H | RF_CLK1  |                   |
| 12H |              |            | 52H | RF CLK2  |                   |
| 13H |              |            | 53H | RF FIFO CTRL1  |                   |
| 14H | PA           |            | 54H | RF FIFO CTRL2  |                   |
| 15H | PAC          |            | 55H | RF_FIFO_CTRL3  |                   |
| 16H | PAPU         |            | 56H | RF FIFO CTRL4  |                   |
| 17H | PAWU         |            | 57H | RF MOD1  |                   |
| 18H | PB           |            | 58H | RF MOD2  |                   |
| 19H | PBC          |            | 59H | $\overline{X}$   |                   |
| 1AH | PBPU         |            | 5AH |  |                   |
| 1BH | INTEG        |            | 5BH |  |                   |
| 1CH | SCC          |            | 5CH |  |                   |
| 1DH | HIRCC        |            | 5DH |  |                   |
| 1EH | HXTC         |            | 5EH |  |                   |
| 1FH |              |            | 5FH |  |                   |
| 20H | LVDC         |            | 60H | RF_OPMOD   |                   |
| 21H | LVRC         |            | 61H | RF SX1   |                   |
| 22H | WDTC         |            | 62H | RF SX2   |                   |
| 23H | RSTC         |            | 63H | RF SX3   |                   |
| 24H | PSCR0        |            | 64H | RF SX4   |                   |
| 25H | PSCR1        |            | 65H | XXXXXX   |                   |
| 26H | PWRC         |            | 66H |  |                   |
| 27H | RF_PWR       |            | 67H | RF_CP3   |                   |
| 28H |              |            | 68H | RF_OD1   |                   |
| 29H |              |            | 69H | XXXXXX   |                   |
| 2AH | MFI0         |            | 6AH | RF_OD3   |                   |
| 2BH | MFI1         |            | 6BH | RF_VCO1  |                   |
| 2CH |              |            | 6CH | RF_VCO2  |                   |
| 2DH |              |            | 6DH | $\times$   |                   |
| 2EH |              |            | 6EH | $\times\!\!\times\!\!\times\!\!\times\!\!\times\!\!\times\!\!\times\!\!\times\!\!\times$ |                   |
| 2FH |              |            | 6FH | RF_TX2   |                   |
| 30H | TB0C         |            | 70H | RF_DFC_CAL   |                   |
| 31H | TB1C         |            | 71H | RF_LDO   |                   |
| 32H | PTMAH        |            | 72H | RF_XO1   |                   |
| 33H | PTMAL        |            | 73H | RF_XO2   |                   |
| 34H | PTMC0        |            | 74H | XXXXXX   |                   |
| 35H | PTMC1        |            | 75H |  |                   |
| 36H | PTMDH        |            | 76H |  |                   |
| 37H | PTMDL        |            | 77H |  |                   |
| 38H | PTMRPH       |            | 78H |  |                   |
| 39H | PTMRPL       |            | 79H |  |                   |
| 3AH | CTMC0        |            | 7AH | XXXXXX   |                   |
| 3BH | CTMC1        |            | 7BH |  |                   |
| 3CH | CTMDL        |            | 7CH | XXXXXX   |                   |
| 3DH | CTMDH        |            | 7DH | XXXXXX   |                   |
| 3EH | CTMAL        |            | 7EH |  |                   |
| 3FH | CTMAH        |            | 7FH |  |                   |
|     | : Unused, re | ead as 00H |     | : Reserved,  | cannot be changed |

**Special Purpose Data Memory** 

Rev. 1.10 32 May 19, 2017



# **Special Function Register Description**

Most of the Special Function Register details will be described in the relevant functional section; however several registers require a separate description in this section.

#### Indirect Addressing Registers – IAR0, IAR1, IAR2

The Indirect Addressing Registers, IAR0, IAR1 and IAR2, although having their locations in normal RAM register space, do not actually physically exist as normal registers. The method of indirect addressing for RAM data manipulation uses these Indirect Addressing Registers and Memory Pointers, in contrast to direct memory addressing, where the actual memory address is specified. Actions on the IAR0, IAR1 and IAR2 registers will result in no actual read or write operation to these registers but rather to the memory location specified by their corresponding Memory Pointers, MP0, MP1L/MP1H or MP2L/MP2H. Acting as a pair, IAR0 and MP0 can together access data only from Sector 0 while the IAR1 register together with the MP1L/MP1H register pair and IAR2 register together with the MP2L/MP2H register pair can access data from any Data Memory Sector. As the Indirect Addressing Registers are not physically implemented, reading the Indirect Addressing Registers will return a result of "00H" and writing to the registers will result in no operation.

## Memory Pointers - MP0, MP1L, MP1H, MP2L, MP2H

Five Memory Pointers, known as MP0, MP1L, MP1H, MP2L, MP2H, are provided. These Memory Pointers are physically implemented in the Data Memory and can be manipulated in the same way as normal registers providing a convenient way with which to address and track data. When any operation to the relevant Indirect Addressing Registers is carried out, the actual address that the microcontroller is directed to is the address specified by the related Memory Pointer. MP0, together with Indirect Addressing Register, IAR0, are used to access data from Sector 0, while MP1L/MP1H together with IAR1 and MP2L/MP2H together with IAR2 are used to access data from all sectors according to the corresponding MP1H or MP2H register. Direct Addressing can be used in all sectors using the extended instructions.

The following example shows how to clear a section of four Data Memory locations already defined as locations adres1 to adres4.

#### Indirect Addressing Program Example 1

```
data .section 'data
adres1 db?
adres2
        db?
adres3
        db?
adres4 db?
       db?
block
code .section at 0 'code'
org 00h
start:
     mov a, 04h
                             ; setup size of block
    mov block, a
    mov a, offset adres1
                             ; Accumulator loaded with first RAM address
    mov mp0, a
                             ; setup memory pointer with first RAM address
loop:
     clr IAR0
                             ; clear the data at address defined by MPO
     inc mp0
                             ; increment memory pointer
     sdz block
                             ; check if last memory location has been cleared
     jmp loop
continue:
```



#### **Indirect Addressing Program Example 2**

```
data .section 'data'
adres1 db?
adres2 db?
adres3 db?
adres4 db?
block db?
code .section at 0 'code'
org 00h
start:
    mov a, 04h
                          ; setup size of block
    mov block, a
    mov a, 01h
                          ; setup the memory sector
    mov mp1h, a
    mov a, offset adres1 ; Accumulator loaded with first RAM address
    mov mp11, a
                           ; setup memory pointer with first RAM address
loop:
    clr IAR1
                          ; clear the data at address defined by MP1L
    inc mp11
                           ; increment memory pointer MP1L
                          ; check if last memory location has been cleared
    sdz block
    jmp loop
continue:
```

The important point to note here is that in the examples shown above, no reference is made to specific Data Memory addresses.

#### **Direct Addressing Program Example using extended instructions**

```
data .section 'data'
temp db?
code .section at 0 'code'
org 00h
start:
                          ; move [m] data to acc
    lmov a, [m]
    lsub a, [m+1]
                          ; compare [m] and [m+1] data
    snz c
                           ; [m]>[m+1]?
     jmp continue
                           ; no
    lmov a, [m]
                            ; yes, exchange [m] and [m+1] data
    mov temp, a
    lmov a, [m+1]
    lmov [m], a
    mov a, temp
    lmov [m+1], a
```

Note: Here "m" is a data memory address located in any data memory sectors. For example, m=1F0H, it indicates address 0F0H in Sector 1.

#### Accumulator - ACC

The Accumulator is central to the operation of any microcontroller and is closely related with operations carried out by the ALU. The Accumulator is the place where all intermediate results from the ALU are stored. Without the Accumulator it would be necessary to write the result of each calculation or logical operation such as addition, subtraction, shift, etc., to the Data Memory resulting in higher programming and timing overheads. Data transfer operations usually involve the temporary storage function of the Accumulator; for example, when transferring data between one user-defined register and another, it is necessary to do this by passing the data through the Accumulator as no direct transfer between two registers is permitted.

Rev. 1.10 34 May 19, 2017



#### Program Counter Low Register - PCL

To provide additional program control functions, the low byte of the Program Counter is made accessible to programmers by locating it within the Special Purpose area of the Data Memory. By manipulating this register, direct jumps to other program locations are easily implemented. Loading a value directly into this PCL register will cause a jump to the specified Program Memory location, however, as the register is only 8-bit wide, only jumps within the current Program Memory page are permitted. When such operations are used, note that a dummy cycle will be inserted.

## Look-up Table Registers - TBLP, TBHP, TBLH

These three special function registers are used to control operation of the look-up table which is stored in the Program Memory. TBLP and TBHP are the table pointers and indicate the location where the table data is located. Their value must be setup before any table read commands are executed. Their value can be changed, for example using the "INC" or "DEC" instructions, allowing for easy table data pointing and reading. TBLH is the location where the high order byte of the table data is stored after a table read data instruction has been executed. Note that the lower order table data byte is transferred to a user defined location.

#### Status Register – STATUS

This 8-bit register contains the SC flag, CZ flag, zero flag (Z), carry flag (C), auxiliary carry flag (AC), overflow flag (OV), power down flag (PDF), and watchdog time-out flag (TO). These arithmetic/logical operation and system management flags are used to record the status and operation of the microcontroller.

With the exception of the TO and PDF flags, bits in the status register can be altered by instructions like most other registers. Any data written into the status register will not change the TO or PDF flag. In addition, operations related to the status register may give different results due to the different instruction operations. The TO flag can be affected only by a system power-up, a WDT time-out or by executing the "CLR WDT" or "HALT" instruction. The PDF flag is affected only by executing the "HALT" or "CLR WDT" instruction or during a system power-up.

The Z, OV, AC, C, SC and CZ flags generally reflect the status of the latest operations.

- C is set if an operation results in a carry during an addition operation or if a borrow does not take place during a subtraction operation; otherwise C is cleared. C is also affected by a rotate through carry instruction.
- AC is set if an operation results in a carry out of the low nibbles in addition, or no borrow from the high nibble into the low nibble in subtraction; otherwise AC is cleared.
- Z is set if the result of an arithmetic or logical operation is zero; otherwise Z is cleared.
- OV is set if an operation results in a carry into the highest-order bit but not a carry out of the highest-order bit, or vice versa; otherwise OV is cleared.
- PDF is cleared by a system power-up or executing the "CLR WDT" instruction. PDF is set by executing the "HALT" instruction.
- TO is cleared by a system power-up or executing the "CLR WDT" or "HALT" instruction. TO is set by a WDT time-out.
- CZ is the operational result of different flags for different instructions. Refer to register definitions for more details.
- SC is the result of the "XOR" operation which is performed by the OV flag and the MSB of the current instruction operation result.



# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

In addition, on entering an interrupt sequence or executing a subroutine call, the status register will not be pushed onto the stack automatically. If the contents of the status registers are important and if the subroutine can corrupt the status register, precautions must be taken to correctly save it.

#### **STATUS Register**

| Bit  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | SC | CZ | TO | PDF | OV  | Z   | AC  | С   |
| R/W  | R  | R  | R  | R   | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | Х  | Х  | 0  | 0   | Х   | Х   | Х   | Х   |

"x" unknown

Bit 7 SC: The result of the "XOR" operation which is performed by the OV flag and the MSB of the instruction operation result.

Bit 6 CZ: The operational result of different flags for different instructions.

For SUB/SUBM/LSUBM instructions, the CZ flag is equal to the Z flag.

For SBC/SBCM/LSBC/LSBCM instructions, the CZ flag is the "AND" operation result which is performed by the previous operation CZ flag and current operation zero flag.

For other instructions, the CZ flag will not be affected.

Bit 5 **TO**: Watchdog Time-out flag

0: After power up or executing the "CLR WDT" or "HALT" instruction

1: A watchdog time-out occurred.

Bit 4 **PDF**: Power down flag

0: After power up or executing the "CLR WDT" instruction

1: By executing the "HALT" instruction

Bit 3 **OV**: Overflow flag

0: No overflow

1: An operation results in a carry into the highest-order bit but not a carry out of the highest-order bit or vice versa.

Bit 2 **Z**: Zero flag

0: The result of an arithmetic or logical operation is not zero

1: The result of an arithmetic or logical operation is zero

Bit 1 AC: Auxiliary flag

0: No auxiliary carry

1: An operation results in a carry out of the low nibbles in addition, or no borrow from the high nibble into the low nibble in subtraction

Bit 0 C: Carry flag

0: No carry-out

1: An operation results in a carry during an addition operation or if a borrow does not take place during a subtraction operation

The "C" flag is also affected by a rotate through carry instruction.

Rev. 1.10 36 May 19, 2017



# **Oscillators**

Various oscillator options offer the user a wide range of functions according to their various application requirements. The flexible features of the oscillator functions ensure that the best optimisation can be achieved in terms of speed and power saving. Oscillator selection and operation are selected through the relevant control registers.

#### **Oscillator Overview**

In addition to being the source of the main system clock the oscillators also provide clock sources for other functions such as the RF circuits, the Watchdog Timer and Time Base Interrupts. An external oscillator requiring some external components as well as fully integrated internal oscillators, requiring no external components, are provided to form a wide range of both fast and slow system oscillators. All oscillator options are selected through the relevant control registers. The higher frequency oscillators provide higher performance but carry with it the disadvantage of higher power requirements, while the opposite is of course true for the lower frequency oscillators. With the capability of dynamically switching between fast and slow system clock, the devices have the flexibility to optimize the performance/power ratio, a feature especially important in power sensitive portable applications.

| Туре                        | Name | Frequency          | Pins      |
|-----------------------------|------|--------------------|-----------|
| External High Speed Crystal | HXT  | 12/12.8/16/19.2MHz | OSC1/OSC2 |
| Internal High Speed RC      | HIRC | 16MHz              | _         |
| Internal Low Speed RC       | LIRC | 32kHz              | _         |

**Oscillator Types** 

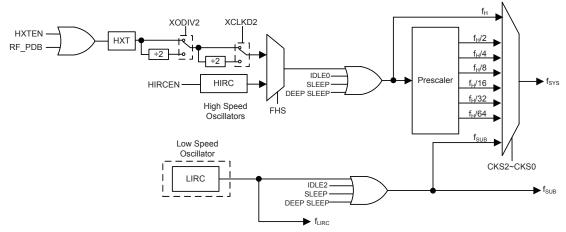
# **System Clock Configurations**

There are several oscillator sources, two high speed oscillators and one low speed oscillator. The high speed system clocks are sourced from an external crystal/ceramic oscillator, HXT, and an internal 16MHz RC oscillator, HIRC. The low speed oscillator is the internal 32kHz RC oscillator, LIRC. Selecting whether the low or high speed oscillator is used as the system oscillator is implemented using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register and as the system clock can be dynamically selected.

The actual source clock used for the high speed oscillator source clock is selected by the FHS bit in the SCC register. The frequency of the slow speed or high speed system clock is also determined using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register. Note that two oscillator selections must be made namely one high speed and one low speed system oscillators. It is not possible to choose a no-oscillator selection for either the high or low speed oscillator.

Rev. 1.10 37 May 19, 2017



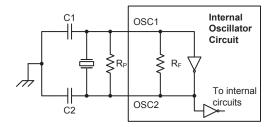


**System Clock Configurations** 

# External Crystal/Ceramic Oscillator - HXT

The External Crystal/Ceramic System Oscillator is one of the high frequency oscillators. It is also used as the clock source for the RF circuitry. For most crystal oscillator configurations, the simple connection of a crystal across OSC1 and OSC2 will create the necessary phase shift and feedback for oscillation, without requiring external capacitors. However, for some crystal types and frequencies, to ensure oscillation, it may be necessary to add two small value capacitors, C1 and C2. Using a ceramic resonator will usually require two small value capacitors, C1 and C2, to be connected as shown for oscillation to occur. The values of C1 and C2 should be selected in consultation with the crystal or resonator manufacturer's specification.

For oscillator stability and to minimise the effects of noise and crosstalk, it is important to ensure that the crystal and any associated resistors and capacitors along with interconnecting lines are all located as close to the MCU as possible.



Note: 1.  $R_P$  is normally not required. C1 and C2 are required.

2. The capacitor load is internally integrated and determined by the RF\_XO1 register.

#### Crystal/Resonator Oscillator

| Crystal Oscillator C1 and C2 Values           |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Crystal Frequency C1 C2                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 16MHz 0pF 0pF                                 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Note: C1 and C2 values are for guidance only. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

**Crystal Recommended Capacitor Values** 

Rev. 1.10 38 May 19, 2017



# Internal High Speed RC Oscillator - HIRC

The internal RC oscillator is a fully integrated system oscillator requiring no external components. The internal RC oscillator has a fixed frequency of 16MHz. Device trimming during the manufacturing process and the inclusion of internal frequency compensation circuits are used to ensure that the influence of the power supply voltage, temperature and process variations on the oscillation frequency are minimised. Note that if this internal system clock option is selected, as it requires no external pins for its operation.

#### Internal 32kHz Oscillator - LIRC

The Internal 32kHz System Oscillator is the low frequency oscillator. It is a fully integrated RC oscillator with a typical frequency of 32kHz at 5V, requiring no external components for its implementation. Device trimming during the manufacturing process and the inclusion of internal frequency compensation circuits are used to ensure that the influence of the power supply voltage, temperature and process variations on the oscillation frequency are minimised.

# **Operating Modes and System Clocks**

Present day applications require that their microcontrollers have high performance but often still demand that they consume as little power as possible, conflicting requirements that are especially true in battery powered portable applications. The fast clocks required for high performance will by their nature increase current consumption and of course vice versa, lower speed clocks reduce current consumption. As Holtek has provided the devices with both high and low speed clock sources and the means to switch between them dynamically, the user can optimise the operation of their microcontroller to achieve the best performance/power ratio.

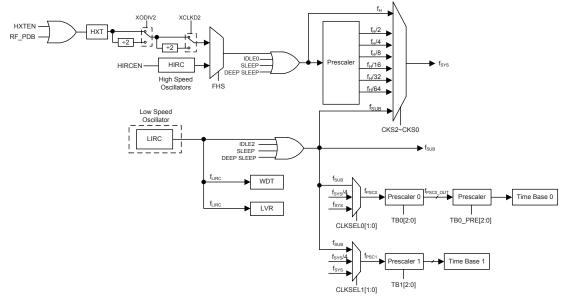
# **System Clocks**

The devices have many different clock sources for both the CPU and peripheral function operation. By providing the user with a wide range of clock options using register programming, a clock system can be configured to obtain maximum application performance.

The main system clock, can come from a high frequency,  $f_H$ , or low frequency,  $f_{SUB}$ , source, and is selected using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register. The high speed system clock can be sourced from an HXT or HIRC oscillator, selected via configuring the FHS bit in the SCC register. The HXT oscillator is enabled using the HXTEN and RF\_PDB bits. Its frequency can be divided by two or four using the XODIV2 and XCLKD2 bits. These latter three bits are described in the RF register section.

The low speed system clock source can be sourced from the internal clock  $f_{SUB}$ . If  $f_{SUB}$  is selected then it is sourced from the LIRC oscillator. The other choice, which is a divided version of the high speed system oscillator has a range of  $f_{H}/2\sim f_{H}/64$ .





# **Device Clock Configurations**

- Note: 1. When the system clock source  $f_{SYS}$  is switched to  $f_{SUB}$  from  $f_H$ , the high speed oscillator will stop to conserve the power or continue to oscillate to provide the clock source,  $f_H \sim f_H/64$ , for peripheral circuit to use, which is determined by configuring the corresponding high speed oscillator enable control bit.
  - 2. When the system enters the DEEP SLEEP Mode, the Time Base 0 clock source is  $f_{LIRC}$ , which is determined by the WDT on/off status.

# **System Operation Modes**

There are seven different modes of operation for the microcontrollers, each one with its own special characteristics and which can be chosen according to the specific performance and power requirements of the application. There are two modes allowing normal operation of the microcontroller, the NORMAL Mode and SLOW Mode. The remaining five modes, the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP, IDLE0, IDLE1 and IDLE2 Mode are used when the microcontroller CPU is switched off to conserve power.

| Operation  | LDO | CPU |      | Regi   | ster Settin | g         |                                    |            | _                | £                 |     |     |     |  |  |
|------------|-----|-----|------|--------|-------------|-----------|------------------------------------|------------|------------------|-------------------|-----|-----|-----|--|--|
| Mode       | LDO | CPU | PWDN | FHIDEN | FSIDEN      | CKS2~CKS0 | f <sub>sys</sub>                   | fн         | f <sub>SUB</sub> | f <sub>LIRC</sub> |     |     |     |  |  |
| NORMAL     | On  | On  | 0    | х      | х           | 000~110   | f <sub>H</sub> ~f <sub>H</sub> /64 | On         | On               | On                |     |     |     |  |  |
| SLOW       | On  | On  | 0    | х      | х           | 111       | f <sub>SUB</sub>                   | On/Off (1) | On               | On                |     |     |     |  |  |
| IDLE0 On   | On  | Off | 0    | 0 0 1  | 1           | 000~110   | Off                                | Off        | On               | On                |     |     |     |  |  |
| IDLEO      | OII | Oii | 0    |        |             | '         | 111                                | On         | Oii              | OII               | OII |     |     |  |  |
| IDLE1      | On  | Off | 0    | 1      | 1           | xxx       | On                                 | On         | On               | On                |     |     |     |  |  |
| IDLE2      | On  | Off | 0    | 1      | 0           | 000~110   | On                                 | On         | Off              | On                |     |     |     |  |  |
| IDLE2      | OII | Oii | 0    | 1 0    | '           | 1         | 1                                  | 1          | 1                | 0                 | 111 | Off | OII |  |  |
| SLEEP      | On  | Off | 0    | 0      | 0           | xxx       | Off                                | Off        | Off              | On/Off (2)        |     |     |     |  |  |
| DEEP SLEEP | Off | Off | 1    | Х      | Х           | XXX       | Off                                | Off        | Off              | On/Off (2)        |     |     |     |  |  |

"x": Don't care

Note: 1. The  $f_H$  clock will be switched on or off by configuring the corresponding oscillator enable bit in the SLOW mode.

2. The f<sub>LIRC</sub> clock can be switched on or off which is controlled by the WDT function being enabled or disabled in the SLEEP or DEEP SLEEP mode.

Rev. 1.10 40 May 19, 2017



#### **NORMAL Mode**

As the name suggests this is one of the main operating modes where the microcontroller has all of its functions operational, where the 1.5V LDO is turned on with the PWDN bit in the PWRC register being low and the system clock is provided by one of the high speed oscillators. This mode operates allowing the microcontroller to operate normally with a clock source sourced from one of the high speed oscillators, either the HXT or HIRC oscillators. The high speed oscillator will however first be divided by a ratio ranging from 1 to 64, the actual ratio being selected by the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register. Although a high speed oscillator is used, running the microcontroller at a divided clock ratio reduces the operating current.

#### **SLOW Mode**

This is also a mode where the microcontroller operates normally although now with a slower speed clock source. The 1.5V LDO is turned on with the PWDN bit in the PWRC register being low. The clock source used will be from  $f_{SUB}$ . The  $f_{SUB}$  clock is derived from the LIRC oscillator.

#### **SLEEP Mode**

The SLEEP Mode is entered when an HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bit are low, the PWDN bit in the PWRC register is low. In the SLEEP mode the CPU will be stopped. The  $f_{SUB}$  clock provided to the peripheral function will also be stopped, too. However the  $f_{LIRC}$  clock can continues to operate if the WDT function is enabled.

#### **IDLE0 Mode**

The IDLE0 Mode is entered when an HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is low, the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is high and the the PWDN bit in the PWRC register is low. In the IDLE0 Mode the CPU will be switched off but the low speed oscillator will be turned on to drive some peripheral functions.

## **IDLE1 Mode**

The IDLE1 Mode is entered when an HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is high, the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is high and the the PWDN bit in the PWRC register is low. In the IDLE1 Mode the CPU will be switched off but both the high and low speed oscillators will be turned on to provide a clock source to keep some peripheral functions operational.

#### **IDLE2 Mode**

The IDLE2 Mode is entered when an HALT instruction is executed and when the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register is high, the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register is low and the the PWDN bit in the PWRC register is low. In the IDLE2 Mode the CPU will be switched off but the high speed oscillator will be turned on to provide a clock source to keep some peripheral functions operational.

# **DEEP SLEEP Mode**

The DEEP SLEEP Mode is entered when an HALT instruction is executed and when the PWDN bit in the PWRC register is high. In the DEEP SLEEP Mode the CPU will be stopped. The  $f_{SUB}$  clock provided to the peripheral function will also be stopped. However the  $f_{LIRC}$  clock can continue to operate if the WDT function is enabled.

Rev. 1.10 41 May 19, 2017



# **Control Registers**

The registers, SCC, HIRCC, HXTC and PWRC, are used to control the system clock and the corresponding oscillator configurations.

| Register |         | Bit  |      |          |        |      |           |        |  |
|----------|---------|------|------|----------|--------|------|-----------|--------|--|
| Name     | 7       | 6    | 5    | 4        | 3      | 2    | 1         | 0      |  |
| SCC      | CKS2    | CKS1 | CKS0 | _        | FHS    | _    | FHIDEN    | FSIDEN |  |
| HIRCC    | _       | _    | _    | _        | _      | _    | HIRCF     | HIRCEN |  |
| HXTC     | _       | _    | _    | _        | _      | _    | HXTF      | HXTEN  |  |
| PWRC     | PA_WAKE | _    | _    | TB0_WAKE | POF33V | LCMD | IO_ISO_EN | PWDN   |  |

**System Operating Mode Control Registers List** 

# **SCC Register**

| Bit  | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4 | 3   | 2 | 1      | 0      |
|------|------|------|------|---|-----|---|--------|--------|
| Name | CKS2 | CKS1 | CKS0 | _ | FHS | _ | FHIDEN | FSIDEN |
| R/W  | R/W  | R/W  | R/W  | _ | R/W | _ | R/W    | R/W    |
| POR  | 0    | 0    | 0    | _ | 0   | _ | 0      | 0      |

Bit 7~5 CKS2~CKS0: System clock selection

000: f<sub>H</sub> 001: f<sub>H</sub>/2 010: f<sub>H</sub>/4 011: f<sub>H</sub>/8 100: f<sub>H</sub>/16 101: f<sub>H</sub>/32 110: f<sub>H</sub>/64 111: f<sub>SUB</sub>

These three bits are used to select which clock is used as the system clock source. In addition to the system clock source directly derived from  $f_H$  or  $f_{SUB}$ , a divided version of the high speed system oscillator can also be chosen as the system clock source.

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 FHS: High Frequency clock selection

0: HIRC – internal high frequence oscillator

1: HXT – external crystal

When this bit is set high to select the external HXT oscillator as the system clock source, the actual clock input to the MCU is determined by the crystal oscillator connected to the OSC1 and OSC2 pins together with the XODIV2 bit in the RF\_XO2 register and the XCLKD2 bit in the RF\_CLK1 register. For example, if  $f_{\rm HXI}$ =16MHz, XODIV2=0 and XCLKD2=0, then  $f_{\rm H}$ =16MHz.

Bit 2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 FHIDEN: High Frequency oscillator control when the CPU is switched off

0: Disable 1: Enable

This bit is used to control whether the high speed oscillator is activated or stopped when the CPU is switched off by executing an "HALT" instruction.

Rev. 1.10 42 May 19, 2017



Bit 0 FSIDEN: Low Frequency oscillator control when CPU is switched off

0: Disable 1: Enable

This bit is used to control whether the low speed oscillator is activated or stopped when the CPU is switched off by executing an "HALT" instruction. The LIRC oscillator is controlled by this bit together with the WDT function enable control when the LIRC is selected to be the low speed oscillator clock source or the WDT function is enabled respectively. If this bit is cleared to 0 but the WDT function is enabled, the  $f_{LIRC}$  clock will also be enabled.

## **HIRCC Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1     | 0      |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|--------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | HIRCF | HIRCEN |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R     | R/W    |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0     | 1      |

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 HIRCF: HIRC oscillator stable flag

0: HIRC unstable 1: HIRC stable

This bit is used to indicate whether the HIRC oscillator is stable or not. When the HIRCEN bit is set to 1 to enable the HIRC oscillator, the HIRCF bit will first be cleared to 0 and then set to 1 after the HIRC oscillator is stable.

Bit 0 HIRCEN: HIRC oscillator enable control

0: Disable 1: Enable

## **HXTC Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1    | 0     |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|------|-------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | HXTF | HXTEN |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R    | R/W   |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0    | 0     |

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **HXTF**: HXT oscillator stable flag

0: HXT unstable 1: HXT stable

This bit is used to indicate whether the HXT oscillator is stable or not. When the HXTEN bit is set to 1 to enable the HXT oscillator, the HXTF bit will first be cleared to 0 and then set to 1 after the HXT oscillator is stable.

Bit 0 **HXTEN**: HXT oscillator enable control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Rev. 1.10 43 May 19, 2017



# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

# **PWRC Register**

| Bit  | 7       | 6 | 5 | 4        | 3      | 2    | 1         | 0    |
|------|---------|---|---|----------|--------|------|-----------|------|
| Name | PA_WAKE | _ | _ | TB0_WAKE | POF33V | LCMD | IO_ISO_EN | PWDN |
| R/W  | R/W     | _ | _ | R/W      | R/W    | R/W  | R/W       | R/W  |
| POR  | 0       | _ | _ | 0        | 1      | 0    | 0         | 0    |

Bit 7 PA\_WAKE: Port A wake-up MCU from DEEP SLEEP Mode flag

0: No Port A wake-up MCU from DEEP SLEEP Mode occured

1: Port A wake-up MCU from DEEP SLEEP Mode occured

This bit indicates whether the MCU has been woken up from the DEEP SLEEP Mode by the port A wake-up function. The PAWU register should be properly configured before the MCU enters the DEEP SLEEP Mode.

Bit 6~5 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 4 TB0\_WAKE: Time Base 0 wake-up MCU from DEEP SLEEP Mode flag

0: No Time Base 0 wake-up MCU from DEEP SLEEP Mode occured

1: Time Base 0 wake-up MCU from DEEP SLEEP Mode occured

This bit indicates whether the MCU has been woken up from the DEEP SLEEP Mode by the Time Base 0 interrupt. The TB0C register and the TB0F interrupt flag should be properly configured before the MCU enters the DEEP SLEEP Mode.

Bit 3 **POF33V**: 3V power domain power on reset flag

0: No 3V power domain power on reset occured

1: 3V power domain power on reset occured

This bit is set high by hardware when a 3V power domain power on reset occurs. It is cleared by application program or when the "CLR WDT" instruction is executed.

Bit 2 LCMD: 1.5V LDO low current mode selection

0: 1.5V LDO normal mode

1: 1.5V LDO low current mode

Bit 1 **IO\_ISO\_EN**: I/O isolation mode selection

0: I/O in normal operation mode

1: I/O in isolation mode (I/O status remains unchanged)

Before entering the DEEP SLEEP Mode this bit must be set high to latch I/O ports, so that I/O ports status will remain unchanged when in the DEEP SLEEP Mode. After the MCU is woken up from the DEEP SLEEP Mode, this bit must be cleared using application program to de-latch I/O ports.

Bit 0 **PWDN**: DEEP SLEEP Mode control

0: MCU under normal operation

1: MCU enters the DEEP SLEEP Mode after HALT (1.5V LDO off by hardware)

If this bit is set high, after executing the HALT instruction, the MCU will enter the DEEP SLEEP Mode, in which case the 1.5V LDO will be turned off by hardware. Before entering the DEEP SLEEP Mode, users should previously store the 1.5V domain system settings to Data Memory and latch the I/O ports using the application program.

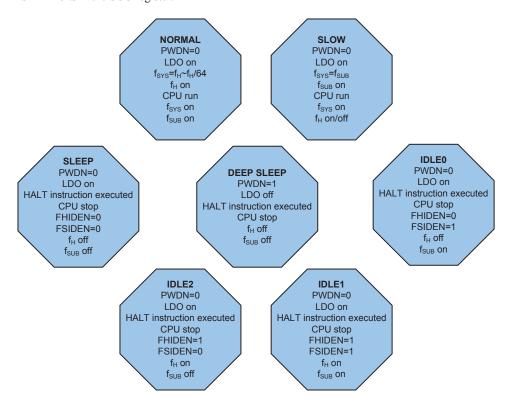
Rev. 1.10 44 May 19, 2017



# **Operating Mode Switching**

The devices can switch between operating modes dynamically allowing the user to select the best performance/power ratio for the present task in hand. In this way microcontroller operations that do not require high performance can be executed using slower clocks thus requiring less operating current and prolonging battery life in portable applications.

In simple terms, Mode Switching between the NORMAL Mode and SLOW Mode is executed using the CKS2~CKS0 bits in the SCC register while Mode Switching from the NORMAL/SLOW Modes to the SLEEP/IDLE or DEEP SLEEP Modes is executed via the HALT instruction. When an HALT instruction is executed, whether the device enters the DEEP SLEEP Mode, IDLE Mode or SLEEP Mode is determined by the condition of the PWDN bit in the PWRC register and the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register.

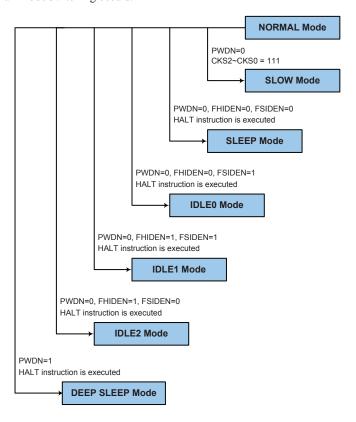




## **NORMAL Mode to SLOW Mode Switching**

When running in the NORMAL Mode, which uses the high speed system oscillator, and therefore consumes more power, the system clock can switch to run in the SLOW Mode by set the CKS2~CKS0 bits to "111" in the SCC register. This will then use the low speed system oscillator which will consume less power. Users may decide to do this for certain operations which do not require high performance and can subsequently reduce power consumption.

The SLOW Mode is sourced from the LIRC oscillator and therefore requires this oscillator to be stable before full mode switching occurs.



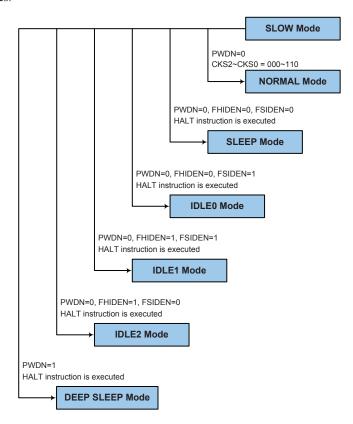
Rev. 1.10 46 May 19, 2017



## **SLOW Mode to NORMAL Mode Switching**

In SLOW mode the system clock is derived from  $f_{SUB}$ . When system clock is switched back to the NORMAL mode from  $f_{SUB}$ , the CKS2~CKS0 bits should be set to "000"~"110" and then the system clock will respectively be switched to  $f_H$ ~ $f_H$ /64.

However, if  $f_H$  is not used in SLOW mode and thus switched off, it will take some time to reoscillate and stabilise when switching to the NORMAL mode from the SLOW mode. This is monitored using the HXTF bit in the HXTC register or the HIRCF bit in the HIRCC register. The time duration required for the high speed system oscillator stabilization is specified in the A.C. Characteristics.



# **Entering the SLEEP Mode**

There is only one way for the devices to enter the SLEEP Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the PWDN bit in the PWRC register equal to "0" and both the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register equal to "0". In this mode all the clocks and functions will be switched off except the WDT function. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The system clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT function is enabled. If the WDT function is disabled, the WDT will be cleared and then stopped.

# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

#### **Entering the IDLE0 Mode**

There is only one way for the devices to enter the IDLE0 Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the PWDN bit in the PWRC register equal to "0", the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to "0" and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to "1". When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f<sub>H</sub> clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction, but the f<sub>SUB</sub> clock will be on.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT function is enabled. If the WDT function is disabled, the WDT will be cleared and then stopped.

## **Entering the IDLE1 Mode**

There is only one way for the devices to enter the IDLE1 Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the PWDN bit in the PWRC register equal to "0" and both the FHIDEN and FSIDEN bits in the SCC register equal to "1". When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f<sub>H</sub> and f<sub>SUB</sub> clocks will be on but the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT function is enabled. If the WDT function is disabled, the WDT will be cleared and then stopped.

## **Entering the IDLE2 Mode**

There is only one way for the devices to enter the IDLE2 Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the PWDN bit in the PWRC register equal to "0", the FHIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to "1" and the FSIDEN bit in the SCC register equal to "0". When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The f<sub>H</sub> clock will be on but the f<sub>SUB</sub> clock will be off and the application program will stop at the
  "HALT" instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT function is enabled. If the WDT function is disabled, the WDT will be cleared and then stopped.

Rev. 1.10 48 May 19, 2017

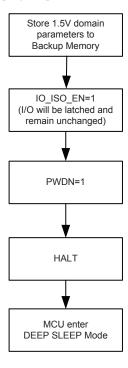


# **Entering the DEEP SLEEP Mode**

There is only one way for the devices to enter the DEEP SLEEP Mode and that is to execute the "HALT" instruction in the application program with the PWDN bit in the PWRC register equal to "1". In this mode all the clocks and functions will be switched off except the WDT function. When this instruction is executed under the conditions described above, the following will occur:

- The system clock will be stopped and the application program will stop at the "HALT" instruction.
- The Data Memory contents and registers will maintain their present condition. It is recommended to previously store the important 1.5V domain system settings in the Data Memory.
- The I/O ports will maintain their present conditions if the IO\_ISO\_EN bit in the PWRC register is set high.
- In the status register, the Power Down flag, PDF, will be set and the Watchdog time-out flag, TO, will be cleared.
- The WDT will be cleared and resume counting if the WDT function is enabled. If the WDT function is disabled, the WDT will be cleared and then stopped.

The accompany flowchart shows the program procedure for entering the DEEP SLEEP Mode.



# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

# **Standby Current Considerations**

As the main reason for entering the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or IDLE Mode is to keep the current consumption of the devices to as low a value as possible, perhaps only in the order of several microamps except in the IDLE1 and IDLE2 Mode, there are other considerations which must also be taken into account by the circuit designer if the power consumption is to be minimised. Special attention must be made to the I/O pins on the devices. All high-impedance input pins must be connected to either a fixed high or low level as any floating input pins could create internal oscillations and result in increased current consumption. This also applies to the device which has different package types, as there may be unbonded pins. These must either be setup as outputs or if setup as inputs must have pull-high resistors connected.

Care must also be taken with the loads, which are connected to I/O pins, which are setup as outputs. These should be placed in a condition in which minimum current is drawn or connected only to external circuits that do not draw current, such as other CMOS inputs. Also note that additional standby current will also be required if the LIRC oscillator has enabled.

In the IDLE1 and IDLE2 Mode the high speed oscillator is on, if the peripheral function clock source is derived from the high speed oscillator, the additional standby current will also be perhaps in the order of several hundred micro-amps.

#### Wake-up

To minimise power consumption the devices can enter the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or any IDLE Modes, where the CPU will be switched off. However, when the device is woken up again, it will take a considerable time for the original system oscillator to restart, stabilise and allow normal operation to resume.

After the system enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, it can be woken up from one of various sources listed as follows:

- An external falling edge on Port A
- · A system interrupt
- · A WDT overflow

After the system enters the DEEP SLEEP Mode, it can be woken up from one of two sources listed as follows:

- · An external falling edge on Port A
- A Time Base 0 interrupt

When the device executes the "HALT" instruction, the PDF flag will be set to 1. The PDF flag will be cleared to 0 if the device experiences a system power-up or executes the clear Watchdog Timer instruction. If the system is woken up by a WDT overflow, a Watchdog Timer reset will be initiated and the TO flag will be set to 1. The TO flag is set if a WDT time-out occurs and causes a wake-up that only resets the Program Counter and Stack Pointer, other flags remain in their original status.

Each pin on Port A can be setup using the PAWU register to permit a negative transition on the pin to wake-up the system. When a pin wakes-up the system from the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the program will resume execution at the instruction following the "HALT" instruction. However, when a pin wakes-up the system from the DEEP SLEEP Mode, the program will resume execution from 0000h.

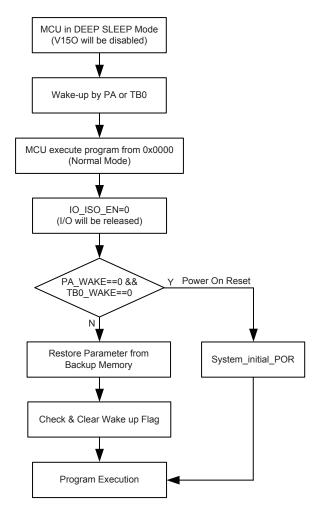
Rev. 1.10 50 May 19, 2017



If the system is woken up from the SLEEP or IDLE Mode by an interrupt, then two possible situations may occur. The first is where the related interrupt is disabled or the interrupt is enabled but the stack is full, in which case the program will resume execution at the instruction following the "HALT" instruction. In this situation, the interrupt which woke-up the device will not be immediately serviced, but will rather be serviced later when the related interrupt is finally enabled or when a stack level becomes free. The other situation is where the related interrupt is enabled and the stack is not full, in which case the regular interrupt response takes place. If the system is woken up from the DEEP SLEEP Mode by the Time Base 0 interrupt, the program will resume execution from 0000h.

If an interrupt request flag is set high before entering the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or IDLE Mode, the wake-up function of the related interrupt will be disabled.

The accompany flowchart shows the program procedure for waking up from the DEEP SLEEP Mode.





# **Watchdog Timer**

The Watchdog Timer is provided to prevent program malfunctions or sequences from jumping to unknown locations, due to certain uncontrollable external events such as electrical noise.

# **Watchdog Timer Clock Source**

The Watchdog Timer clock source is provided by the internal clock,  $f_{LIRC}$ , which is sourced from the LIRC oscillator. The LIRC internal oscillator has an approximate frequency of 32kHz and this specified internal clock period can vary with  $V_{DD}$ , temperature and process variations. The Watchdog Timer source clock is then subdivided by a ratio of  $2^8$  to  $2^{18}$  to give longer timeouts, the actual value being chosen using the WS2~WS0 bits in the WDTC register.

# **Watchdog Timer Control Register**

A single register, WDTC, controls the required time-out period as well as the enable/disable operation.

# **WDTC Register**

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | WE4 | WE3 | WE2 | WE1 | WE0 | WS2 | WS1 | WS0 |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 1   | 0   | 1   | 0   | 0   | 1   | 1   |

## Bit 7~3 **WE4~WE0**: WDT function software control

If the WDT is always enabled determined by the configuration option:

10101: Enable 01010: Enable

Other values: Reset MCU

If the WDT is controlled by the WDTC register determined by the configuration option:

10101: Disable 01010: Enable

Other values: Reset MCU

The WE4~WE0 bits setup is determined by the WDT configuration option selection.

When these bits are changed to any other values except 10101B and 01010B due to environmental noise the microcontroller will be reset, this reset operation will be activated after a delay time,  $t_{SRESET}$ , and the WRF bit in the RSTFC register will be set high.

#### Bit 2~0 WS2~WS0: WDT time-out period selection

 $\begin{array}{l} 000:\ 2^{8}/f_{LIRC} \\ 001:\ 2^{10}/f_{LIRC} \\ 010:\ 2^{12}/f_{LIRC} \\ 011:\ 2^{14}/f_{LIRC} \\ 100:\ 2^{15}/f_{LIRC} \\ 101:\ 2^{16}/f_{LIRC} \end{array}$ 

110:  $2^{17}/f_{LIRC}$ 111:  $2^{18}/f_{LIRC}$ 

These three bits determine the division ratio of the Watchdog Timer source clock, which in turn determines the timeout period.

Rev. 1.10 52 May 19, 2017



#### **RSTFC Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3    | 2    | 1   | 0   |
|------|---|---|---|---|------|------|-----|-----|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | RSTF | LVRF | LRF | WRF |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W  | R/W  | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0    | х    | 0   | 0   |

"x": unknown

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 RSTF: Reset control register software reset flag

Refer to Internal Reset Control section.

Bit 2 LVRF: LVR function reset flag

Refer to in the Low Voltage Reset section.

Bit 1 LRF: LVR control register software reset flag

Refer to in the Low Voltage Reset section.

Bit 0 WRF: WDT control register software reset flag

0: Not occurred 1: Occurred

This bit is set to 1 by the WDT Control register software reset and cleared by the application program. Note that this bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application program.

# **Watchdog Timer Operation**

The Watchdog Timer operates by providing a device reset when its timer overflows. This means that in the application program and during normal operation the user has to strategically clear the Watchdog Timer before it overflows to prevent the Watchdog Timer from executing a reset. This is done using the clear watchdog instructions. If the program malfunctions for whatever reason, jumps to an unknown location, or enters an endless loop, these clear instructions will not be executed in the correct manner, in which case the Watchdog Timer will overflow and reset the device. There are five bits, WE4~WE0, in the WDTC register to offer the enable/disable control and reset control of the Watchdog Timer. The WDT function is determined by the related configuration option together with the WE4~WE0 bits, as summerised in the following table. If the WE4~WE0 bits are set to any other values, other than 01010B and 10101B, it will reset the device after a delay time, t<sub>SRESET</sub>. After power on these bits will have a value of 01010B.

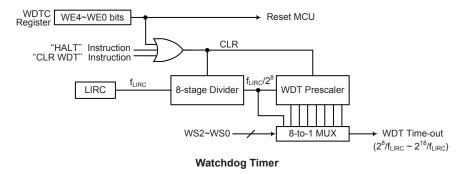
| Configuration Option   | WE4~WE0 Bits     | WDT Function |
|------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| MDT always anabled     | 10101B or 01010B |              |
| WDT always enabled     | Any other value  | Reset MCU    |
|                        | 10101B           | Disable      |
| WDT controlled by WDTC | 01010B           | Enable       |
|                        | Any other value  | Reset MCU    |

# Watchdog Timer Enable/Disable Control

Under normal program operation, a Watchdog Timer time-out will initialise a device reset and set the status bit TO. However, if the system is in the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or IDLE Mode, when a Watchdog Timer time-out occurs, the TO bit in the status register will be set and only the Program Counter and Stack Pointer will be reset. Three methods can be adopted to clear the contents of the Watchdog Timer. The first is a WDT reset, which means a certain value except 01010B and 10101B written into the WE4~WE0 bits, the second is using the Watchdog Timer software clear instruction, the third is via a HALT instruction. There is only one method of using software instruction to clear the Watchdog Timer. That is to use the single "CLR WDT" instruction to clear the WDT.



The maximum time-out period is when the  $2^{18}$  division ratio is selected. As an example, with a 32kHz LIRC oscillator as its source clock, this will give a maximum watchdog period of around 8 second for the  $2^{18}$  division ratio, and a minimum timeout of 8ms for the  $2^{8}$  division ration.



# **Reset and Initialisation**

A reset function is a fundamental part of any microcontroller ensuring that the devices can be set to some predetermined condition irrespective of outside parameters. The most important reset condition is after power is first applied to the microcontroller. In this case, internal circuitry will ensure that the microcontroller, after a short delay, will be in a well-defined state and ready to execute the first program instruction. After this power-on reset, certain important internal registers will be set to defined states before the program commences. One of these registers is the Program Counter, which will be reset to zero forcing the microcontroller to begin program execution from the lowest Program Memory address.

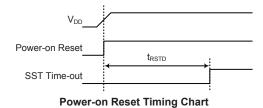
In addition to the power-on reset, another reset exists in the form of a Low Voltage Reset, LVR, where a full reset is implemented in situations where the power supply voltage falls below a certain threshold. Another type of reset is when the Watchdog Timer overflows and resets the microcontroller. All types of reset operations result in different register conditions being setup.

# **Reset Functions**

There are several ways in which a microcontroller reset can occur, through events occurring internally.

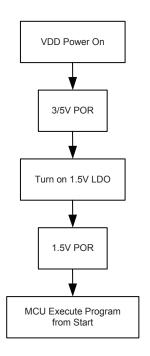
#### **Power-on Reset**

The most fundamental and unavoidable reset is the one that occurs after power is first applied to the microcontroller. As well as ensuring that the Program Memory begins execution from the first memory address, a power-on reset also ensures that certain other registers are preset to known conditions. All the I/O port and port control registers will power up in a high condition ensuring that all pins will be first set to inputs.



Rev. 1.10 54 May 19, 2017





#### **Internal Reset Control**

There is an internal reset control register, RSTC, which is used to provide a reset when the device operates abnormally due to the environmental noise interference. If the content of the RSTC register is set to any value other than 010101018 or 101010108, it will reset the device after a delay time,  $t_{SRESET}$ . After power on the register will have a value of 010101018.

| RSTC7 ~ RSTC0 Bits | Reset Function |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 01010101B          | No operation   |
| 10101010B          | No operation   |
| Any other value    | Reset MCU      |

**Internal Reset Function Control** 

# RSTC Register

| Bit  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | RSTC7 | RSTC6 | RSTC5 | RSTC4 | RSTC3 | RSTC2 | RSTC1 | RSTC0 |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | 0     | 1     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 1     |

Bit 7~0 **RSTC7~RSTC0**: Reset function control

01010101: On operation 10101010: On operation Other values: Reset MCU

If these bits are changed due to adverse environmental conditions, the microcontroller will be reset. The reset operation will be activated after a delay time, tsreset, and the RSTF bit in the RSTFC register will be set to 1.

Rev. 1.10 55 May 19, 2017

#### RSTFC Register

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3    | 2    | 1   | 0   |
|------|---|---|---|---|------|------|-----|-----|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | RSTF | LVRF | LRF | WRF |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W  | R/W  | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0    | Х    | 0   | 0   |

"x": unknown

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 RSTF: Reset control register software reset flag

0: Not occurred 1: Occurred

This bit is set to 1 by the RSTC control register software reset and cleared by the application program. Note that this bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application

program.

Bit 2 LVRF: LVR function reset flag

Refer to the Low Voltage Reset section.

Bit 1 LRF: LVR control register software reset flag

Refer to the Low Voltage Reset section.

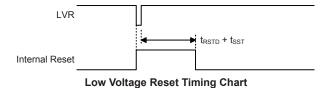
Bit 0 WRF: WDT control register software reset flag

Refer to the Watchdog Timer Control Register section.

# Low Voltage Reset - LVR

The microcontroller contains a low voltage reset circuit in order to monitor the supply voltage of the device and provides an MCU reset should the value fall below a certain predefined level.

The LVR function is enabled/disabled using the related configuration option with a specific LVR voltage  $V_{LVR}$ . If the supply voltage of the device drops to within a range of  $0.9V \sim V_{LVR}$  such as might occur when changing the battery in battery powered applications, the LVR will automatically reset the device internally and the LVRF bit in the RSTFC register will also be set to 1. For a valid LVR signal, a low supply voltage, i.e., a voltage in the range between  $0.9V \sim V_{LVR}$  must exist for a time greater than that specified by  $t_{LVR}$  in the LVD/LVR characteristics. If the low supply voltage state does not exceed this value, the LVR will ignore the low supply voltage and will not perform a reset function. The actual  $V_{LVR}$  value is fixed at 1.9V. If the LVS7~LVS0 bits are changed to some different values by environmental noise, the LVR will reset the device after after a delay time,  $t_{SRESET}$ . When this happens, the LRF bit in the RSTFC register will be set to 1. After power on the register will have the value of 01010101B. Note that the LVR function will be automatically disabled when the device enters the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or IDLE mode.



Rev. 1.10 56 May 19, 2017



# LVRC Register

| Bit  | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0    |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Name | LVS7 | LVS6 | LVS5 | LVS4 | LVS3 | LVS2 | LVS1 | LVS0 |
| R/W  |
| POR  | 0    | 1    | 0    | 1    | 0    | 1    | 0    | 1    |

Bit 7~0 LVS7~LVS0: LVR Voltage Select control

01010101: 1.9V 00110011: 1.9V 10011001: 1.9V 10101010: 1.9V

Any other value: Generates MCU reset – register is reset to POR value

When an actual low voltage condition occurs, as specified by the defined LVR voltage values above, an MCU reset will be generated. The reset operation will be activated after the low voltage condition keeps more than a  $t_{\rm LVR}$  time. In this situation the register contents will remain the same after such a reset occurs.

Any register value, other than the defined LVR value above, will also result in the generation of an MCU reset. The reset operation will be activated after a delay time,  $t_{SRESET}$ . However in this situation the register contents will be reset to the POR value.

## RSTFC Register

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3    | 2    | 1   | 0   |
|------|---|---|---|---|------|------|-----|-----|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | RSTF | LVRF | LRF | WRF |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W  | R/W  | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0    | х    | 0   | 0   |

"x": unknown

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 RSTF: Reset control register software reset flag

Refer to the Internal Reset Control section.

Bit 2 LVRF: LVR function reset flag

0: Not occur 1: Occurred

This bit is set to 1 when a specific Low Voltage Reset situation condition occurs. This bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application program.

Bit 1 LRF: LVR control register software reset flag

0: Not occur 1: Occurred

This bit is set to 1 if the LVRC register contains any non-defined LVR voltage register values. This in effect acts like a software-reset function. This bit can only be cleared to 0 by the application program.

Bit 0 WRF: WDT control register software reset flag
Refer to the Watchdog Timer Control Register section.

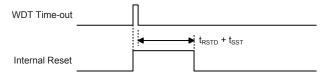
#### **IAP Reset**

The IAP reset is caused by writing data 55H to the FC1 register.



# **Watchdog Time-out Reset during Normal Operation**

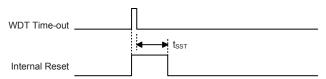
The Watchdog time-out Reset during normal operations is the same as a LVR reset except that the Watchdog time-out flag TO will be set to "1".



WDT Time-out Reset during Normal Operation Timing Chart

## Watchdog Time-out Reset during DEEP SLEEP/SLEEP/IDLE Mode

The Watchdog time-out Reset during DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or IDLE Mode is a little different from other kinds of reset. Most of the conditions remain unchanged except that the Program Counter and the Stack Pointer will be cleared to "0" and the TO flag will be set to "1". Refer to the A.C. Characteristics for t<sub>SST</sub> details.



WDT Time-out Reset during DEEP SLEEP/SLEEP/IDLE Timing Chart

## **Reset Initial Conditions**

The different types of reset described affect the reset flags in different ways. These flags, known as PDF and TO are located in the status register and are controlled by various microcontroller operations, such as the SLEEP or IDLE Mode function or Watchdog Timer. The reset flags are shown in the table:

| то | PDF | RESET Conditions   |
|----|-----|--|
| 0  | 0   | Power-on reset   |
| u  | u   | LVR reset during NORMAL or SLOW Mode operation                     |
| 1  | u   | WDT time-out reset during NORMAL or SLOW Mode operation            |
| 1  | 1   | WDT time-out reset during DEEP SLEEP, IDLE or SLEEP Mode operation |

"u" stands for unchanged

The following table indicates the way in which the various components of the microcontroller are affected after a power-on reset occurs.

| Item               | Condition After RESET                            |
|--------------------|--|
| Program Counter    | Reset to zero                                    |
| Interrupts         | All interrupts will be disabled                  |
| WDT, Time Base     | Clear after reset, WDT begins counting           |
| Timer Modules      | Timer Modules will be turned off                 |
| Input/Output Ports | I/O ports will be setup as inputs                |
| Stack Pointer      | Stack Pointer will point to the top of the stack |

The different kinds of resets all affect the internal registers of the microcontroller in different ways. To ensure reliable continuation of normal program execution after a reset occurs, it is important to know what condition the microcontroller is in after a particular reset occurs. The following table describes how each type of reset affects each of the microcontroller internal registers.

Rev. 1.10 58 May 19, 2017



| Register | BC68F2130 | BC68F2140 | Power On Reset | WDT Time-out<br>(Normal Operation) | WDT Time-out<br>(HALT) |  |
|----------|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|--|
| IAR0     | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| MP0      | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| IAR1     | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| MP1L     | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| MP1H     | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| ACC      | •         | •         | XXXX XXXX      | uuuu uuuu                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| PCL      | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | 0000 0000              |  |
| TBLP     | •         | •         | XXXX XXXX      | uuuu uuuu                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| TBLH     | •         | •         | XXXX XXXX      | uuuu uuuu                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
|          | •         |           | X X X          | u u u                              | u u u                  |  |
| TBHP     |           | •         | X X X X        | uuuu                               | uuuu                   |  |
| STATUS   | •         | •         | xx00 xxxx      | xx1u uuuu                          | uu11 uuuu              |  |
| IAR2     | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| MP2L     | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| MP2H     | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| RSTFC    | •         | •         | 0 x 0 0        | uuuu                               | uuuu                   |  |
| INTC0    | •         | •         | -000 0000      | -000 0000                          | -uuu uuuu              |  |
| INTC1    | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
|          | •         |           | 11 1111        | 11 1111                            | uu uuuu                |  |
| PA       |           | •         | 1111 1111      | 1111 1111                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
|          | •         |           | 11 1111        | 11 1111                            | u u u u u u            |  |
| PAC      |           | •         | 1111 1111      | 1111 1111                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
|          | •         |           | 00 0000        | 00 0000                            | uu uuuu                |  |
| PAPU     |           | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
|          | •         |           | 00 0000        | 00 0000                            | uu uuuu                |  |
| PAWU     |           | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
|          | •         |           | 11             | 11                                 | uu                     |  |
| PB       |           | •         | 11 1111        | 11 1111                            | u u u u u u            |  |
|          | •         |           | 11             | 11                                 | uu                     |  |
| PBC      |           | •         | 11 1111        | 11 1111                            | u u u u u              |  |
|          | •         |           | 00             | 00                                 | uu                     |  |
| PBPU     |           | •         | 00 0000        | 00 0000                            | uu uuuu                |  |
| INTEG    | •         | •         | 0000           | 0000                               | uuuu                   |  |
| SCC      | •         | •         | 001- 0x00      | 001- 0x00                          | uuu- uxuu              |  |
| HIRCC    | •         | •         | x x 0 1        | x x 0 1                            | x x u u                |  |
| HXTC     | •         | •         | 0 0            | 0 0                                | u u                    |  |
| LVDC     | •         | •         | 00 x000        | 00 x000                            | uu xuuu                |  |
| LVRC     | •         | •         | 0101 0101      | 0101 0101                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| WDTC     | •         | •         | 0101 0011      | 0101 0011                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| RSTC     | •         | •         | 0101 0101      | 0101 0101                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| PSCR0    | •         | •         | 0 0            | 0 0                                | u u                    |  |
| PSCR1    | •         | •         | 0 0            | 0 0                                | u u                    |  |
| PWRC     | •         | •         | 00 1000        | uu uuuu                            | uu uuuu                |  |
| RF PWR   | •         |           | 0              | 0                                  | u                      |  |
| RF PWR   |           | •         | ()             |                                    |                        |  |



| Register      | BC68F2130 | BC68F2140 | Power On Reset | WDT Time-out<br>(Normal Operation) | WDT Time-out<br>(HALT) |  |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|--|
| MFI1          | •         | •         | 0000           | 0000                               | uuuu                   |  |
| TB0C          | •         | •         | 0000 -000      | 0000 -000                          | uuuu -uuu              |  |
| TB1C          | •         | •         | 0000           | 0000                               | uuuu                   |  |
| PTMAH         | •         | •         | 0 0            | 0 0                                | u u                    |  |
| PTMAL         | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| PTMC0         | •         | •         | 0000 0         | 0000 0                             | uuuu u                 |  |
| PTMC1         | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| PTMDH         | •         | •         | 0 0            | 0 0                                | u u                    |  |
| PTMDL         | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| PTMRPH        | •         | •         | 0 0            | 0 0                                | u u                    |  |
| PTMRPL        | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| CTMC0         | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| CTMC1         | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| CTMDL         | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| CTMDH         | •         | •         | 0 0            | 0 0                                | u u                    |  |
| CTMAL         | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| СТМАН         | •         | •         | 0 0            | 0 0                                | u u                    |  |
| FC0           | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| FC1           | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| FARL          | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
|               | •         |           | 000            | 000                                | u u u                  |  |
| FARH          |           | •         | 0000           | 0000                               | uuuu                   |  |
| FD0L          | •         | •         | 00 0000        | 00 0000                            | uu uuuu                |  |
| FD0H          | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| FD1L          | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| FD1H          | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| FD2L          | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| FD2H          | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| FD3L          | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| FD3H          | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| MFI2          | •         | •         | -000 -000      | -000 -000                          | - u u u - u u u        |  |
| RF_OPER       | •         | •         | 000            | 000                                | uuu                    |  |
| RF_CLK1       | •         | •         | 10-00          | 10-00                              | u u - u u              |  |
| RF_CLK2       | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| RF_FIFO_CTRL1 | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| RF_FIFO_CTRL2 | •         | •         | 0011 1111      | 0011 1111                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| RF_FIFO_CTRL3 | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| RF_FIFO_CTRL4 | •         | •         | 0 0001         | 0 0001                             | u uuuu                 |  |
| RF_MOD1       | •         | •         | 1001 0000      | 1001 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| RF_MOD2       | •         | •         | 001            | 001                                | u u u                  |  |
| RF_OPMOD      | •         | •         | 000            | 000                                | u u u                  |  |
| <br>RF_SX1    | •         | •         | -011 0110      | -011 0110                          | -uuu uuuu              |  |
| RF_SX2        | •         | •         | 0000 1010      | 0000 1010                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| RF_SX3        | •         | •         | 1101 0111      | 1101 0111                          | uuuu uuuu              |  |
| RF_SX4        | •         | •         | 0011           | 0011                               | uuuu                   |  |



| Register   | BC68F2130 | BC68F2140 | Power On Reset | WDT Time-out<br>(Normal Operation) | WDT Time-out<br>(HALT) |
|------------|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| RF_CP3     | •         | •         | 1100 1010      | 1100 1010                          | uuuu uuuu              |
| RF_OD1     | •         | •         | 0000 0100      | 0000 0100                          | uuuu uuuu              |
| RF_OD3     | •         | •         | 01 -100        | 01 -100                            | uu -uuu                |
| RF_VCO1    | •         | •         | 0001 0000      | 0001 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |
| RF_VCO2    | •         | •         | 0-10 0000      |                                    | u-uu uuuu              |
| RF_TX2     | •         | •         | 1101 -000      | 1101 -000                          | uuuu -uuu              |
| RF_DFC_CAL | •         | •         | 00-0 0000      | 00-0 0000                          | uu-u uuuu              |
| RF_LDO     | •         | •         | 00011000       | 00011000                           | uuuu uuuu              |
| RF_XO1     | •         | •         | 10-1 0101      | 10-1 0101                          | uu-u uuuu              |
| RF_XO2     | •         | •         | -01- 0011      | -01- 0011                          | -uu- uuuu              |
| PAS0       | •         | •         | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                          | uuuu uuuu              |
| PAS1       | •         |           | 0000           | 0000                               | uuuu                   |
| ras i      |           | •         | 00 0000        | 00 0000                            | u u u u u u            |

Note: "u" stands for unchanged
"x" stands for unknown
"-" stands for unimplemented

# **Input/Output Ports**

Holtek microcontrollers offer considerable flexibility on their I/O ports. With the input or output designation of every pin fully under user program control, pull-high selections for all ports and wake-up selections on certain pins, the user is provided with an I/O structure to meet the needs of a wide range of application possibilities.

The device provides bidirectional input/output lines labeled with port names PA~PB. These I/O ports are mapped to the RAM Data Memory with specific addresses as shown in the Special Purpose Data Memory table. All of these I/O ports can be used for input and output operations. For input operation, these ports are non-latching, which means the inputs must be ready at the T2 rising edge of instruction "MOV A, [m]", where m denotes the port address. For output operation, all the data is latched and remains unchanged until the output latch is rewritten.

| Register | Bit |   |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
|----------|-----|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| Name     | 7   | 6 | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |  |  |  |  |
| PA       | _   | _ | PA5   | PA4   | PA3   | PA2   | PA1   | PA0   |  |  |  |  |
| PAC      | _   | _ | PAC5  | PAC4  | PAC3  | PAC2  | PAC1  | PAC0  |  |  |  |  |
| PAPU     | _   | _ | PAPU5 | PAPU4 | PAPU3 | PAPU2 | PAPU1 | PAPU0 |  |  |  |  |
| PAWU     | _   | _ | PAWU5 | PAWU4 | PAWU3 | PAWU2 | PAWU1 | PAWU0 |  |  |  |  |
| РВ       | _   | _ | PB5   | PB4   | _     | _     | _     | _     |  |  |  |  |
| PBC      | _   | _ | PBC5  | PBC4  | _     | _     | _     | _     |  |  |  |  |
| PBPU     | _   | _ | PBPU5 | PBPU4 | _     | _     | _     | _     |  |  |  |  |

"—": Unimplemented, read as "0"

I/O Logic Function Registers List - BC68F2130

| Register | Bit   |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |  |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| Name     | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |  |  |  |  |
| PA       | PA7   | PA6   | PA5   | PA4   | PA3   | PA2   | PA1   | PA0   |  |  |  |  |
| PAC      | PAC7  | PAC6  | PAC5  | PAC4  | PAC3  | PAC2  | PAC1  | PAC0  |  |  |  |  |
| PAPU     | PAPU7 | PAPU6 | PAPU5 | PAPU4 | PAPU3 | PAPU2 | PAPU1 | PAPU0 |  |  |  |  |
| PAWU     | PAWU7 | PAWU6 | PAWU5 | PAWU4 | PAWU3 | PAWU2 | PAWU1 | PAWU0 |  |  |  |  |
| PB       | _     | _     | PB5   | PB4   | PB3   | PB2   | PB1   | PB0   |  |  |  |  |
| PBC      | _     | _     | PBC5  | PBC4  | PBC3  | PBC2  | PBC1  | PBC0  |  |  |  |  |
| PBPU     | _     | _     | PBPU5 | PBPU4 | PBPU3 | PBPU2 | PBPU1 | PBPU0 |  |  |  |  |

"—": Unimplemented, read as "0"

I/O Logic Function Registers List - BC68F2140

# **Pull-high Resistors**

Many product applications require pull-high resistors for their switch inputs usually requiring the use of an external resistor. To eliminate the need for these external resistors, all I/O pins, when configured as an input have the capability of being connected to an internal pull-high resistor. These pull-high resistors are selected using registers, namely PAPU~PBPU, and are implemented using weak PMOS transistors.

Note that the pull-high resistor can be controlled by the relevant pull-high control register only when the pin-shared functional pin is selected as an input or NMOS output. Otherwise, the pull-high resistors cannot be enabled.

## **PxPU Register**

| Bit  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | PxPU7 | PxPU6 | PxPU5 | PxPU4 | PxPU3 | PxPU2 | PxPU1 | PxPU0 |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |

PxPUn: I/O Port x Pin pull-high function control

0: Disable 1: Enable

The PxPUn bit is used to control the pin pull-high function. Here the "x" can be A and B. However, the actual available bits for each I/O Port of each device may be different.

# Port A Wake-up

The HALT instruction forces the microcontroller into the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or IDLE Mode which preserves power, a feature that is important for battery and other low-power applications. Various methods exist to wake-up the microcontroller, one of which is to change the logic condition on one of the Port A pins from high to low. This function is especially suitable for applications that can be woken up via external switches. Each pin on Port A can be selected individually to have this wake-up feature using the PAWU register.

Note that the wake-up function can be controlled by the wake-up control registers only when the pin-shared functional pin is selected as general purpose input/output and the MCU enters the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or IDLE mode.

Rev. 1.10 62 May 19, 2017



## **PAWU Register**

| Bit  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | PAWU7 | PAWU6 | PAWU5 | PAWU4 | PAWU3 | PAWU2 | PAWU1 | PAWU0 |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |

PAWUn: Port A Pin wake-up function control

0: Disable 1: Enable

The PAWUn bit is used to control the Port A pin wake-up function. However, the actual available bits for each device may be different.

# I/O Port Control Registers

Each I/O port has its own control register known as PAC~PBC, to control the input/output configuration. With this control register, each CMOS output or input can be reconfigured dynamically under software control. Each pin of the I/O ports is directly mapped to a bit in its associated port control register. For the I/O pin to function as an input, the corresponding bit of the control register must be written as a "1". This will then allow the logic state of the input pin to be directly read by instructions. When the corresponding bit of the control register is written as a "0", the I/O pin will be setup as a CMOS output. If the pin is currently setup as an output, instructions can still be used to read the output register. However, it should be noted that the program will in fact only read the status of the output data latch and not the actual logic status of the output pin.

## **PxC Register**

| Bit  | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0    |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Name | PxC7 | PxC6 | PxC5 | PxC4 | PxC3 | PxC2 | PxC1 | PxC0 |
| R/W  |
| POR  | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    |

PxCn: I/O Port x Pin type selection

0: Output 1: Input

The PxCn bit is used to control the pin type selection. Here the "x" can be A and B. However, the actual available bits for each I/O Port of each device may be different.

## **Pin-shared Functions**

The flexibility of the microcontroller range is greatly enhanced by the use of pins that have more than one function. Limited numbers of pins can force serious design constraints on designers but by supplying pins with multi-functions, many of these difficulties can be overcome. For these pins, the desired function of the multi-function I/O pins is selected by a series of registers via the application program control.

# **Pin-shared Function Selection Registers**

The limited number of supplied pins in a package can impose restrictions on the amount of functions a certain device can contain. However by allowing the same pins to share several different functions and providing a means of function selection, a wide range of different functions can be incorporated into even relatively small package sizes. The devices include Port "x" Output Function Selection register "n", labeled as PxSn, which can select the desired functions of the multi-function pin-shared pins.

# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

The most important point to note is to make sure that the desired pin-shared function is properly selected and also deselected. For most pin-shared functions, to select the desired pin-shared function, the pin-shared function should first be correctly selected using the corresponding pin-shared control register. After that the corresponding peripheral functional setting should be configured and then the peripheral function can be enabled. However, special point must be noted for some digital input pins, such as INTn, xTCKn, xTPnI, etc, which share the same pin-shared control configuration with their corresponding general purpose I/O functions when setting the revelant pin-shared control bit fields. To select these pin functions, in addition to the necessary pin-shared control and peripheral functional setup forementioned, they must also be setup as input by setting the corresponding bit in the I/O port control register. To correctly deselect the pin-shared function, the peripheral function should first be disabled and then the corresponding pin-shared function control register can be modified to select other pin-shared functions.

| Register Name    | Bit   |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |  |  |  |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|
|                  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |  |  |  |
| PAS0             | PAS07 | PAS06 | PAS05 | PAS04 | PAS03 | PAS02 | PAS01 | PAS00 |  |  |  |
| PAS1 (BC68F2130) | _     | _     | _     | _     | PAS13 | PAS12 | PAS11 | PAS10 |  |  |  |
| PAS1 (BC68F2140) | _     | _     | PAS15 | PAS14 | PAS13 | PAS12 | PAS11 | PAS10 |  |  |  |

**Pin-shared Function Selection Registers List** 

## PAS0 Register – BC68F2130/BC68F2140

| Bit  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | PAS07 | PAS06 | PAS05 | PAS04 | PAS03 | PAS02 | PAS01 | PAS00 |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7~6 PAS07~PAS06: PA3 Pin-Shared function selection

00/01/10/11: PA3/INT0

Bit 5~4 PAS05~PAS04: PA2 Pin-Shared function selection

00/10/11: PA2 01: PTP

Bit 3~2 PAS03~PAS02: PA1 Pin-Shared function selection

00/01/10/11: PA1/PTCK

Bit 1~0 PAS01~PAS00: PA0 Pin-Shared function selection

00/10/11: PA0/PTPI

01: PTPB

## • PAS1 Register - BC68F2130

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|---|---|---|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | PAS13 | PAS12 | PAS11 | PAS10 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 PAS13~PAS12: PA5 Pin-Shared function selection

00/10/11: PA5 01: CTP

Bit 1~0 PAS11~PAS10: PA4 Pin-Shared function selection

00/01/10/11: PA4/INT1



# • PAS1 Register - BC68F2140

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|---|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | _ | _ | PAS15 | PAS14 | PAS13 | PAS12 | PAS11 | PAS10 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | _ | _ | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5~4 PAS15~PAS14: PA6 Pin-Shared function selection

00/10/11: PA6 01: CTPB

Bit 3~2 PAS13~PAS12: PA5 Pin-Shared function selection

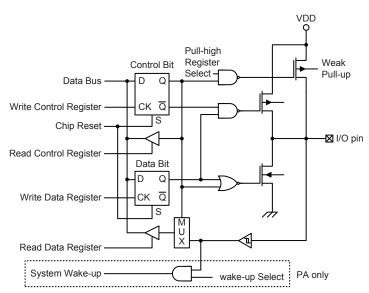
00/10/11: PA5 01: CTP

Bit 1~0 PAS11~PAS10: PA4 Pin-Shared function selection

00/01/10/11: PA4/INT1

#### I/O Pin Structures

The accompanying diagram illustrates the internal structure of the I/O logic function. As the exact logical construction of the I/O pin will differ from this drawing, it is supplied as a guide only to assist with the functional understanding of the I/O logic function. The wide range of pin-shared structures does not permit all types to be shown.



**Logic Function Input/Output Structure** 



# **Programming Considerations**

Within the user program, one of the first things to consider is port initialisation. After a reset, all of the I/O data and port control registers will be set high. This means that all I/O pins will default to an input state, the level of which depends on the other connected circuitry and whether pull-high selections have been chosen. If the port control registers are then programmed to setup some pins as outputs, these output pins will have an initial high output value unless the associated port data registers are first programmed. Selecting which pins are inputs and which are outputs can be achieved byte-wide by loading the correct values into the appropriate port control register or by programming individual bits in the port control register using the "SET [m].i" and "CLR [m].i" instructions. Note that when using these bit control instructions, a read-modify-write operation takes place. The microcontroller must first read in the data on the entire port, modify it to the required new bit values and then rewrite this data back to the output ports.

Port A has the additional capability of providing wake-up function. When the device is in the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or IDLE Mode, various methods are available to wake the device up. One of these is a high to low transition of any of the Port A pins. Single or multiple pins on Port A can be setup to have this function.

# **Timer Modules - TM**

One of the most fundamental functions in any microcontroller device is the ability to control and measure time. To implement time related functions each device includes several Timer Modules, abbreviated to the name TM. The TMs are multi-purpose timing units and serve to provide operations such as Timer/Counter, Input Capture, Compare Match Output and Single Pulse Output as well as being the functional unit for the generation of PWM signals. Each of the TMs has two individual interrupts. The addition of input and output pins for each TM ensures that users are provided with timing units with a wide and flexible range of features.

The common features of the different TM types are described here with more detailed information provided in the individual Compact and Periodic TM sections.

#### Introduction

Each of the devices contains two TMs and each individual TM can be categorised as a certain type, namely Compact Type TM or Periodic Type TM. Although similar in nature, the different TM types vary in their feature complexity. The common features to all of the Compact and Periodic TMs will be described in this section. The detailed operation regarding each of the TM types will be described in separate sections. The main features and differences between the two types of TMs are summarised in the accompanying table.

| Function                     | СТМ            | PTM            |
|------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Timer/Counter                | √              | √              |
| Input Capture                | _              | $\checkmark$   |
| Compare Match Output         | √              | √              |
| PWM Channels                 | 1              | 1              |
| Single Pulse Output          | _              | 1              |
| PWM Alignment                | Edge           | Edge           |
| PWM Adjustment Period & Duty | Duty or Period | Duty or Period |

**TM Function Summary** 

Rev. 1.10 66 May 19, 2017



| СТМ        | РТМ        |
|------------|------------|
| 10-bit CTM | 10-bit PTM |

TM Name/Type Reference

# **TM Operation**

The different types of TM offer a diverse range of functions, from simple timing operations to PWM signal generation. The key to understanding how the TM operates is to see it in terms of a free running counter whose value is then compared with the value of pre-programmed internal comparators. When the free running counter has the same value as the pre-programmed comparator, known as a compare match situation, a TM interrupt signal will be generated which can clear the counter and perhaps also change the condition of the TM output pin. The internal TM counter is driven by a user selectable clock source, which can be an internal clock or an external pin.

#### **TM Clock Source**

The clock source which drives the main counter in each TM can originate from various sources. The selection of the required clock source is implemented using the  $xTCK2\sim xTCK0$  bits in the xTM control registers, where "x" stands for C or P type TM. The clock source can be a ratio of the system clock  $f_{SYS}$  or the internal high clock  $f_{H}$ , the  $f_{SUB}$  clock source or the external xTCK pin. The xTCK pin clock source is used to allow an external signal to drive the TM as an external clock source or for event counting.

# **TM Interrupts**

The Compact and Periodic type TMs each have two internal interrupts, one for each of the internal comparator A or comparator P, which generate a TM interrupt when a compare match condition occurs. When a TM interrupt is generated it can be used to clear the counter and also to change the state of the TM output pin.

### **TM External Pins**

Each of the TMs, irrespective of what type, has one TM input pin, with the label xTCK. The xTM input pin, xTCK, is essentially a clock source for the xTM and is selected using the xTCK2~xTCK0 bits in the xTMC0 register. This external TM input pin allows an external clock source to drive the internal TM. The xTCK input pin can be chosen to have either a rising or falling active edge. The PTCK pin is also used as the external trigger input pin in single pulse output mode.

For the PTM, there is other input pin, PTPI. It is the capture input whose active edge can be a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges and the active edge transition type is selected using the PTIO1~PTIO0 bits in the PTMC1 register. There is another capture input, PTCK, for PTM capture input mode, which can be used as the external trigger input source except the PTPI pin.

The TMs each have two output pins with the label xTP and xTPB. When the TM is in the Compare Match Output Mode, these pins can be controlled by the TM to switch to a high or low level or to toggle when a compare match situation occurs. The external xTP and xTPB output pins are also the pins where the TM generates the PWM output waveform. As the TM input and output pins are pinshared with other functions, the TM input and output functions must first be setup using the relevant pin-shared function selection bits described in the Pin-shared Function section.

| C1    | ГМ        | PTM        |           |  |  |
|-------|-----------|------------|-----------|--|--|
| Input | Output    | Input      | Output    |  |  |
| CTCK  | СТР, СТРВ | PTCK, PTPI | PTP, PTPB |  |  |

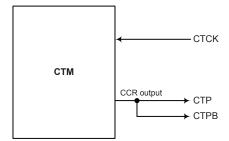
TM External Pins

Rev. 1.10 67 May 19, 2017

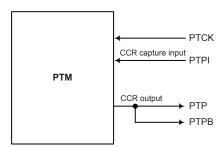


# TM Input/Output Pin Selection

Selecting to have a TM input/output or whether to retain its other shared function is implemented using the relevant pin-shared function selection registers, with the corresponding selection bits in each pin-shared function register corresponding to a TM input/output pin. Configuring the selection bits correctly will setup the corresponding pin as a TM input/output. The details of the pin-shared function selection are described in the pin-shared function section.



**CTM Function Pin Control Block Diagram** 



PTM Function Pin Control Block Diagram

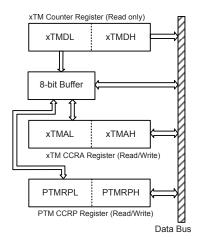
# **Programming Considerations**

The TM Counter Registers and the Capture/Compare CCRA and CCRP registers, all have a low and high byte structure. The high bytes can be directly accessed, but as the low bytes can only be accessed via an internal 8-bit buffer, reading or writing to these register pairs must be carried out in a specific way. The important point to note is that data transfer to and from the 8-bit buffer and its related low byte only takes place when a write or read operation to its corresponding high byte is executed.

As the CCRA and CCRP registers are implemented in the way shown in the following diagram and accessing these register pairs is carried out in a specific way as described above, it is recommended to use the "MOV" instruction to access the CCRA and CCRP low byte registers, named xTMAL and PTMRPL, using the following access procedures. Accessing the CCRA or CCRP low byte registers without following these access procedures will result in unpredictable values.

Rev. 1.10 68 May 19, 2017





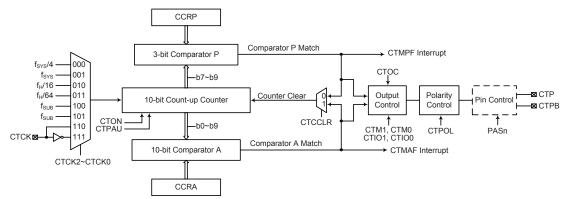
The following steps show the read and write procedures:

- · Writing Data to CCRA
  - Step 1. Write data to Low Byte xTMAL or PTMRPL
    - Note that here data is only written to the 8-bit buffer.
  - Step 2. Write data to High Byte xTMAH or PTMRPH
    - Here data is written directly to the high byte registers and simultaneously data is latched from the 8-bit buffer to the Low Byte registers.
- · Reading Data from the Counter Registers and or CCRA
  - Step 1. Read data from the High Byte xTMDH, xTMAH or PTMRPH
    - Here data is read directly from the High Byte registers and simultaneously data is latched from the Low Byte register into the 8-bit buffer.
  - Step 2. Read data from the Low Byte xTMDL, xTMAL or PTMRPL
    - This step reads data from the 8-bit buffer.



# Compact Type TM - CTM

Although the simplest form of the three TM types, the Compact TM type still contains three operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/Event Counter and PWM Output modes. The Compact TM can also be controlled with an external input pin and can drive two external output pins.



**Compact Type TM Block Diagram** 

# **Compact TM Operation**

At its core is a 10-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with CCRP and CCRA registers. The CCRP is three bits wide whose value is compared with the highest three bits in the counter while the CCRA is the ten bits and therefore compares with all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 10-bit counter using the application program, is to clear the counter by changing the CTON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a CTM interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Compact Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control two output pins. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.

# **Compact Type TM Register Description**

Overall operation of the Compact TM is controlled using several registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 10-bit value, while a read/write register pair exists to store the internal 10-bit CCRA value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes as well as the three CCRP bits.

| Register |       | Bit   |       |       |      |       |       |        |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|-------|--------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Name     | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3    | 2     | 1     | 0      |  |  |  |  |  |
| CTMC0    | CTPAU | CTCK2 | CTCK1 | CTCK0 | CTON | CTRP2 | CTRP1 | CTRP0  |  |  |  |  |  |
| CTMC1    | CTM1  | CTM0  | CTIO1 | CTIO0 | CTOC | CTPOL | CTDPX | CTCCLR |  |  |  |  |  |
| CTMDL    | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3   | D2    | D1    | D0     |  |  |  |  |  |
| CTMDH    | _     | _     | _     | _     | _    | _     | D9    | D8     |  |  |  |  |  |
| CTMAL    | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3   | D2    | D1    | D0     |  |  |  |  |  |
| СТМАН    | _     | _     | _     | _     | _    | _     | D9    | D8     |  |  |  |  |  |

10-bit Compact TM Register List

Rev. 1.10 70 May 19, 2017



## **CTMC0** Register

| Bit  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3    | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | CTPAU | CTCK2 | CTCK1 | CTCK0 | CTON | CTRP2 | CTRP1 | CTRP0 |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0    | 0     | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7 CTPAU: CTM Counter Pause Control

0: Run 1: Pause

The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the CTM will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

Bit 6~4 CTCK2~CTCK0: Select CTM Counter clock

 $\begin{array}{c} 000: \ f_{SYS}/4 \\ 001: \ f_{SYS} \\ 010: \ f_H/16 \\ 011: \ f_H/64 \\ 100: \ f_{SUB} \\ 101: \ f_{SUB} \end{array}$ 

110: CTCK rising edge clock111: CTCK falling edge clock

These three bits are used to select the clock source for the CTM. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source  $f_{SYS}$  is the system clock, while  $f_H$  and  $f_{SUB}$  are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the oscillator section.

Bit 3 CTON: CTM Counter On/Off Control

0: Off 1: On

This bit controls the overall on/off function of the CTM. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run, clearing the bit disables the CTM. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the CTM which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value until the bit returns high again.

If the CTM is in the Compare Match Output Mode or the PWM Output Mode then the CTM output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the CTOC bit, when the CTON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2~0 CTRP2~CTRP0: CTM CCRP 3-bit register, compared with the CTM Counter bit 9~bit 7 Comparator P Match Period

000: 1024 CTM clocks 001: 128 CTM clocks 010: 256 CTM clocks 011: 384 CTM clocks 100: 512 CTM clocks 101: 640 CTM clocks 110: 768 CTM clocks 111: 896 CTM clocks

These three bits are used to setup the value on the internal CCRP 3-bit register, which are then compared with the internal counter's highest three bits. The result of this comparison can be selected to clear the internal counter if the CTCCLR bit is set to zero. Setting the CTCCLR bit to zero ensures that a compare match with the CCRP values will reset the internal counter. As the CCRP bits are only compared with the highest three counter bits, the compare values exist in 128 clock cycle multiples. Clearing all three bits to zero is in effect allowing the counter to overflow at its maximum value.

# CTMC1 Register

| Bit  | 7    | 6    | 5     | 4     | 3    | 2     | 1     | 0      |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|------|-------|-------|--------|
| Name | CTM1 | CTM0 | CTIO1 | CTIO0 | CTOC | CTPOL | CTDPX | CTCCLR |
| R/W  | R/W  | R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W    |
| POR  | 0    | 0    | 0     | 0     | 0    | 0     | 0     | 0      |

Bit 7~6 CTM1~CTM0: Select CTM Operating Mode

00: Compare Match Output Mode

01: Undefined

10: PWM Output Mode

11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the CTM. To ensure reliable operation the CTM should be switched off before any changes are made to the CTM1 and CTM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the CTM output pin state is undefined.

Bit 5~4 CTIO1~CTIO0: Select CTP output function

Compare Match Output Mode

00: No change

01: Output low

10: Output high

11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode

00: PWM Output inactive state

01: PWM Output active state

10: PWM output

11: Undefined

Timer/Counter Mode

Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the CTM output pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the CTM is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits determine how the CTM output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The CTM output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the CTM output pin should be setup using the CTOC bit in the CTMC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the CTOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the CTM output pin when a compare match occurs. After the CTM output pin changes state it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the CTON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Output Mode, the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits determine how the CTM output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PWM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits only after the CTM has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits are changed when The CTM is running.

Bit 3 CTOC: CTP Output control bit

Compare Match Output Mode

0: Initial low

1: Initial high

PWM Output Mode

0: Active low

1: Active high



This is the output control bit for the CTM output pin. Its operation depends upon whether CTM is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Output Mode. It has no effect if the CTM is in the Timer/Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode it determines the logic level of the CTM output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Output Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low.

Bit 2 CTPOL: CTP Output polarity Control

0: Non-invert

1: Invert

This bit controls the polarity of the CTP output pin. When the bit is set high the CTM output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the CTM is in the Timer/Counter Mode.

Bit 1 CTDPX: CTM PWM period/duty Control

0: CCRP - period; CCRA - duty 1: CCRP - duty; CCRA - period

This bit, determines which of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used for period and duty control of the PWM waveform.

Bit 0 CTCCLR: Select CTM Counter clear condition

0: CTM Comparatror P match1: CTM Comparatror A match

This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Compact TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the CTCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The CTCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Output Mode.

#### **CTMDL** Register

| Bit  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Name | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| R/W  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  |
| POR  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  |

Bit  $7\sim 0$  **D7\simD0**: CTM Counter Low Byte Register bit  $7\sim$  bit 0

CTM 10-bit Counter bit  $7 \sim \text{bit } 0$ 

#### **CTMDH Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1  | 0  |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | D9 | D8 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R  | R  |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0  | 0  |

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit  $1\sim 0$  **D9\simD8**: CTM Counter High Byte Register bit  $1\sim$  bit 0

CTM 10-bit Counter bit 9 ~ bit 8

### **CTMAL Register**

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D7  | D6  | D5  | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: CTM CCRA Low Byte Register bit  $7 \sim$  bit 0 CTM 10-bit CCRA bit  $7 \sim$  bit 0

#### **CTMAH Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1   | 0   |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----|-----|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | D9  | D8  |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 **D9~D8**: CTM CCRA High Byte Register bit 1 ~ bit 0

CTM 10-bit CCRA bit 9 ~ bit 8

## **Compact Type TM Operating Modes**

The Compact Type TM can operate in one of three operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the CTM1 and CTM0 bits in the CTMC1 register.

## **Compare Match Output Mode**

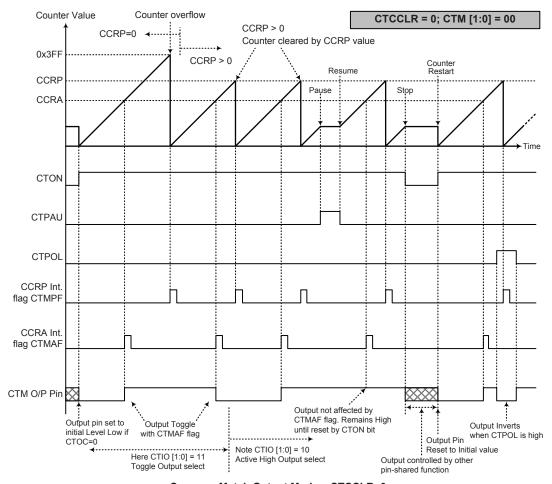
To select this mode, bits CTM1 and CTM0 in the CTMC1 register, should be set to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the CTCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both CTMAF and CTMPF interrupt request flags for Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

If the CTCCLR bit in the CTMC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the CTMAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when CTCCLR is high no CTMPF interrupt request flag will be generated. If the CCRA bits are all zero, the counter will overflow when it reaches its maximum 10-bit, 3FF Hex, value, however here the CTMAF interrupt request flag will not be generated.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the CTM output pin will change state. The CTM output pin condition however only changes state when a CTMAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The CTMPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the CTM output pin. The way in which the CTM output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits in the CTMC1 register. The CTM output pin can be selected using the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the CTM output pin, which is setup after the CTON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the CTOC bit. Note that if the CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.

Rev. 1.10 74 May 19, 2017



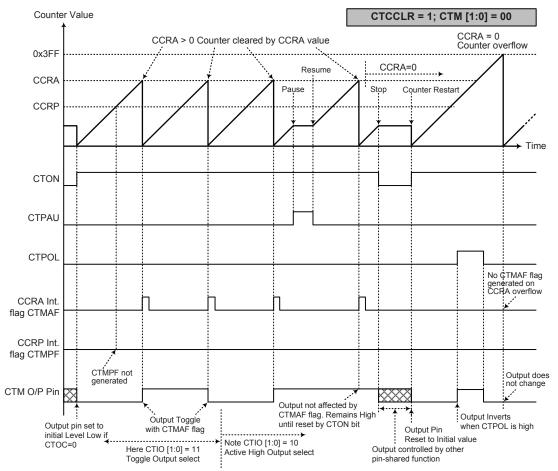


Compare Match Output Mode - CTCCLR=0

Note: 1. With CTCCLR = 0, a Comparator P match will clear the counter

- 2. The CTM output pin controlled only by the CTMAF flag
- 3. The output pin reset to initial state by a CTON bit rising edge





Compare Match Output Mode - CTCCLR=1

Note: 1. With CTCCLR = 1, a Comparator A match will clear the counter

- 2. The CTM output pin controlled only by the CTMAF flag
- 3. The output pin reset to initial state by a CTON rising edge
- 4. The CTMPF flags is not generated when CTCCLR = 1

Rev. 1.10 76 May 19, 2017



#### **Timer/Counter Mode**

To select this mode, bits CTM1 and CTM0 in the CTMC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the CTM output pin is not used. Therefore the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the CTM output pin is not used in this mode, the pin can be used as a normal I/O pin or other pin-shared function.

#### **PWM Output Mode**

To select this mode, bits CTM1 and CTM0 in the CTMC1 register should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the CTM is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the CTM output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM Output Mode, the CTCCLR bit has no effect on the PWM operation. Both of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. Which register is used to control either frequency or duty cycle is determined using the CTDPX bit in the CTMC1 register. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The CTOC bit In the CTMC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two CTIO1 and CTIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the CTM output pin to a fixed high or low level. The CTPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

#### CTM, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, CTDPX=0

| CCRP   | 001b | 010b | 011b | 100b | 101b | 110b | 111b | 000b |  |
|--------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|
| Period | 128  | 256  | 384  | 512  | 640  | 768  | 896  | 1024 |  |
| Duty   |      | CCRA |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |

If f<sub>SYS</sub>=8MHz, CTM clock source is f<sub>SYS</sub>/4, CCRP=100b, CCRA=128,

The CTM PWM output frequency= $(f_{SYS}/4)/512=f_{SYS}/2048=3.9063$ kHz, duty=128/512=25%.

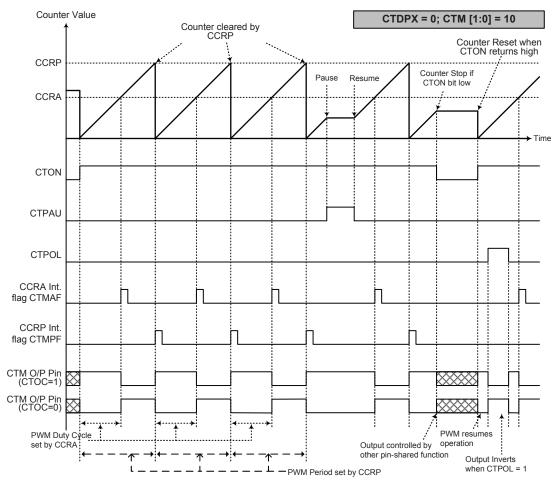
If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.

### CTM, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode, CTDPX=1

| CCRP   | 001b | 010b | 011b | 100b | 101b | 110b | 111b | 000b |  |  |
|--------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|--|
| Period |      | CCRA |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |  |
| Duty   | 128  | 256  | 384  | 512  | 640  | 768  | 896  | 1024 |  |  |

The PWM output period is determined by the CCRA register value together with the CTM clock while the PWM duty cycle is defined by the CCRP register value.





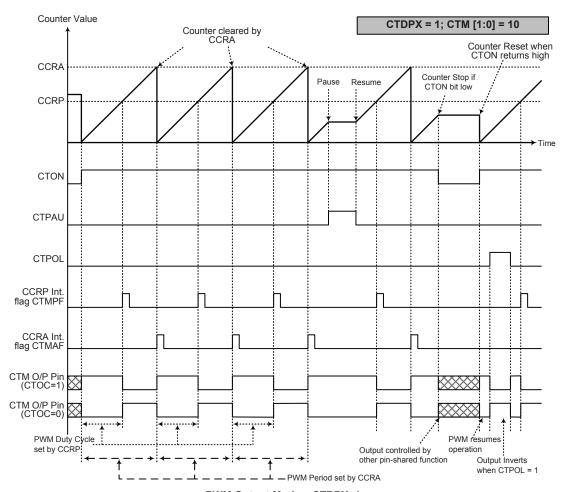
PWM Output Mode - CTDPX=0

Note: 1. Here CTDPX = 0 – Counter cleared by CCRP

- 2. A counter clear sets PWM Period
- 3. The internal PWM function continues running even when CTIO[1:0] = 00 or 01
- 4. The CTCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation

Rev. 1.10 78 May 19, 2017





PWM Output Mode - CTDPX=1

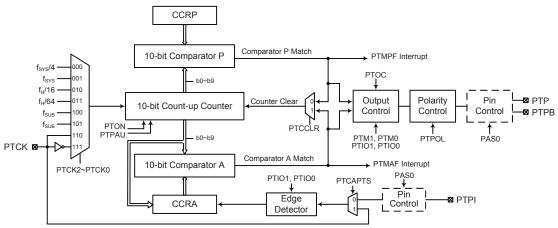
Note: 1. Here CTDPX = 1 - Counter cleared by CCRA

- 2. A counter clear sets PWM Period
- 3. The internal PWM function continues even when CTIO[1:0] = 00 or 01
- 4. The CTCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation



# Periodic Type TM - PTM

The Periodic Type TM contains five operating modes, which are Compare Match Output, Timer/ Event Counter, Capture Input, Single Pulse Output and PWM Output modes. The Periodic TM can be controlled with two external input pins and can drive two external output pins.



Periodic Type TM Block Diagram

### **Periodic TM Operation**

The Periodic Type TM core is a 10-bit count-up counter which is driven by a user selectable internal or external clock source. There are also two internal comparators with the names, Comparator A and Comparator P. These comparators will compare the value in the counter with CCRP and CCRA registers. The CCRP and CCRA comparators are 10-bit wide whose value is respectively compared with all counter bits.

The only way of changing the value of the 10-bit counter using the application program, is to clear the counter by changing the PTON bit from low to high. The counter will also be cleared automatically by a counter overflow or a compare match with one of its associated comparators. When these conditions occur, a PTM interrupt signal will also usually be generated. The Periodic Type TM can operate in a number of different operational modes, can be driven by different clock sources including an input pin and can also control more than one output pins. All operating setup conditions are selected using relevant internal registers.

### **Periodic Type TM Register Description**

Overall operation of the Periodic Type TM is controlled using a series of registers. A read only register pair exists to store the internal counter 10-bit value, while two read/write register pairs exist to store the internal 10-bit CCRA value and CCRP value. The remaining two registers are control registers which setup the different operating and control modes.

Rev. 1.10 80 May 19, 2017



| Register | Bit   |       |       |       |       |       |         |        |  |  |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|--------|--|--|
| Name     | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1       | 0      |  |  |
| PTMC0    | PTPAU | PTCK2 | PTCK1 | PTCK0 | PTON  | _     | _       | _      |  |  |
| PTMC1    | PTM1  | PTM0  | PTIO1 | PTIO0 | PTOC  | PTPOL | PTCAPTS | PTCCLR |  |  |
| PTMDL    | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3    | D2    | D1      | D0     |  |  |
| PTMDH    | _     | _     | _     | _     | _     | _     | D9      | D8     |  |  |
| PTMAL    | D7    | D6    | D5    | D4    | D3    | D2    | D1      | D0     |  |  |
| PTMAH    | _     | _     | _     | _     | _     | _     | D9      | D8     |  |  |
| PTMRPL   | PTRP7 | PTRP6 | PTRP5 | PTRP4 | PTRP3 | PTRP2 | PTRP1   | PTRP0  |  |  |
| PTMRPH   | _     | _     | _     | _     | _     | _     | PTRP9   | PTRP8  |  |  |

10-bit Periodic TM Registers List

### PTMC0 Register

| Bit  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3    | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|---|---|---|
| Name | PTPAU | PTCK2 | PTCK1 | PTCK0 | PTON | _ | _ | _ |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W  | _ | _ | _ |
| POR  | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0    | _ | _ | _ |

Bit 7 **PTPAU**: PTM Counter Pause Control

0: Run 1: Pause

The counter can be paused by setting this bit high. Clearing the bit to zero restores normal counter operation. When in a Pause condition the PTM will remain powered up and continue to consume power. The counter will retain its residual value when this bit changes from low to high and resume counting from this value when the bit changes to a low value again.

#### Bit 6~4 PTCK2~PTCK0: Select PTM Counter clock

 $\begin{array}{c} 000: \ f_{SYS}/4 \\ 001: \ f_{SYS} \\ 010: \ f_{H}/16 \\ 011: \ f_{H}/64 \\ 100: \ f_{SUB} \\ 101: \ f_{SUB} \end{array}$ 

110: PTCK rising edge clock111: PTCK falling edge clock

These three bits are used to select the clock source for the PTM. The external pin clock source can be chosen to be active on the rising or falling edge. The clock source  $f_{SYS}$  is the system clock, while  $f_H$  and  $f_{SUB}$  are other internal clocks, the details of which can be found in the oscillator section.

### Bit 3 **PTON**: PTM Counter On/Off Control

0: Off 1: On

This bit controls the overall on/off function of the PTM. Setting the bit high enables the counter to run, clearing the bit disables the PTM. Clearing this bit to zero will stop the counter from counting and turn off the PTM which will reduce its power consumption. When the bit changes state from low to high the internal counter value will be reset to zero, however when the bit changes from high to low, the internal counter will retain its residual value until the bit returns high again.

If the PTM is in the Compare Match Output Mode, PWM output Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode then the PTM output pin will be reset to its initial condition, as specified by the PTOC bit, when the PTON bit changes from low to high.

### Bit 2~0 Unimplemented, read as "0"



# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

#### **PTMC1** Register

| Bit  | 7    | 6    | 5     | 4     | 3    | 2     | 1       | 0      |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|------|-------|---------|--------|
| Name | PTM1 | PTM0 | PTIO1 | PTIO0 | PTOC | PTPOL | PTCAPTS | PTCCLR |
| R/W  | R/W  | R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W  | R/W   | R/W     | R/W    |
| POR  | 0    | 0    | 0     | 0     | 0    | 0     | 0       | 0      |

Bit 7~6 **PTM1~PTM0**: Select PTM Operating Mode

00: Compare Match Output Mode

01: Capture Input Mode

10: PWM Output Mode or Single Pulse Output Mode

11: Timer/Counter Mode

These bits setup the required operating mode for the PTM. To ensure reliable operation the PTM should be switched off before any changes are made to the PTM1 and PTM0 bits. In the Timer/Counter Mode, the PTM output pin control must be disabled.

Bit 5~4 **PTIO1~PTIO0**: Select PTM external pin PTP, PTPI or PTCK function

Compare Match Output Mode

00: No change

01: Output low

10: Output high

11: Toggle output

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode

00: PWM Output inactive state

01: PWM Output active state

10: PWM output

11: Single pulse output

Capture Input Mode

00: Input capture at rising edge of PTPI or PTCK

01: Input capture at falling edge of PTPI or PTCK

10: Input capture at falling/rising edge of PTPI or PTCK

11: Input capture disabled

Timer/Counter Mode

Unused

These two bits are used to determine how the PTM output pin changes state when a certain condition is reached. The function that these bits select depends upon in which mode the PTM is running.

In the Compare Match Output Mode, the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits determine how the PTM output pin changes state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. The PTM output pin can be setup to switch high, switch low or to toggle its present state when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bits are both zero, then no change will take place on the output. The initial value of the PTM output pin should be setup using the PTOC bit in the PTMC1 register. Note that the output level requested by the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits must be different from the initial value setup using the PTOC bit otherwise no change will occur on the PTM output pin when a compare match occurs. After the PTM output pin changes state, it can be reset to its initial level by changing the level of the PTON bit from low to high.

In the PWM Output Mode, the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits determine how the PTM output pin changes state when a certain compare match condition occurs. The PWM output function is modified by changing these two bits. It is necessary to only change the values of the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits only after the TM has been switched off. Unpredictable PWM outputs will occur if the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are changed when the PTM is running.



Bit 3 **PTOC**: PTM PTP Output control bit

Compare Match Output Mode

0: Initial low 1: Initial high

PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode

0: Active low 1: Active high

This is the output control bit for the PTM output pin. Its operation depends upon whether PTM is being used in the Compare Match Output Mode or in the PWM Output Mode/Single Pulse Output Mode. It has no effect if the PTM is in the Timer/ Counter Mode. In the Compare Match Output Mode it determines the logic level of the PTM output pin before a compare match occurs. In the PWM Output Mode it determines if the PWM signal is active high or active low. In the Single Pulse Output Mode it determines the logic level of the PTM output pin when the PTON bit changes from low to high.

Bit 2 **PTPOL**: PTM PTP Output polarity Control

0: Non-invert

1: Invert

This bit controls the polarity of the PTP output pin. When the bit is set high the PTM output pin will be inverted and not inverted when the bit is zero. It has no effect if the PTM is in the Timer/Counter Mode.

Bit 1 **PTCAPTS**: PTM Capture Trigger Source Selection

0: From PTPI pin 1: From PTCK pin

Bit 0 **PTCCLR**: Select PTM Counter clear condition

0: PTM Comparator P match1: PTM Comparator A match

This bit is used to select the method which clears the counter. Remember that the Periodic TM contains two comparators, Comparator A and Comparator P, either of which can be selected to clear the internal counter. With the PTCCLR bit set high, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator A. When the bit is low, the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from the Comparator P or with a counter overflow. A counter overflow clearing method can only be implemented if the CCRP bits are all cleared to zero. The PTCCLR bit is not used in the PWM Output Mode, Single Pulse Output Mode or Capture Input Mode.

#### **PTMDL** Register

| Bit  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Name | D7 | D6 | D5 | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D0 |
| R/W  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  |
| POR  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  |

Bit  $7 \sim 0$  **D7~D0**: PTM Counter Low Byte Register bit  $7 \sim$  bit 0

PTM 10-bit Counter bit  $7 \sim bit 0$ 

### **PTMDH Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1  | 0  |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | D9 | D8 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R  | R  |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0  | 0  |

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit  $1\sim 0$  **D9\simD8**: PTM Counter High Byte Register bit  $1\sim$  bit 0

PTM 10-bit Counter bit 9 ~ bit 8

## **PTMAL Register**

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D7  | D6  | D5  | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: PTM CCRA Low Byte Register bit  $7 \sim$  bit 0 PTM 10-bit CCRA bit  $7 \sim$  bit 0

## **PTMAH Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1   | 0   |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----|-----|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | D9  | D8  |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit  $1\sim 0$  **D9\simD8**: PTM CCRA High Byte Register bit  $1\sim$  bit 0

PTM 10-bit CCRA bit  $9 \sim bit 8$ 

## **PTMRPL** Register

| Bit  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | PTRP7 | PTRP6 | PTRP5 | PTRP4 | PTRP3 | PTRP2 | PTRP1 | PTRP0 |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |

Bit  $7\sim0$  **PTRP7~PTRP0**: PTM CCRP Low Byte Register bit  $7\sim$  bit 0 PTM 10-bit CCRP bit  $7\sim$  bit 0

# **PTMRPH Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1     | 0     |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|-------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | PTRP9 | PTRP8 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit  $1\sim0$  **PTRP9~PTRP8**: PTM CCRP High Byte Register bit  $1\sim$  bit 0

PTM 10-bit CCRP bit 9 ~ bit 8

Rev. 1.10 84 May 19, 2017



## **Periodic Type TM Operating Modes**

The Periodic Type TM can operate in one of five operating modes, Compare Match Output Mode, PWM Output Mode, Single Pulse Output Mode, Capture Input Mode or Timer/Counter Mode. The operating mode is selected using the PTM1 and PTM0 bits in the PTMC1 register.

### **Compare Match Output Mode**

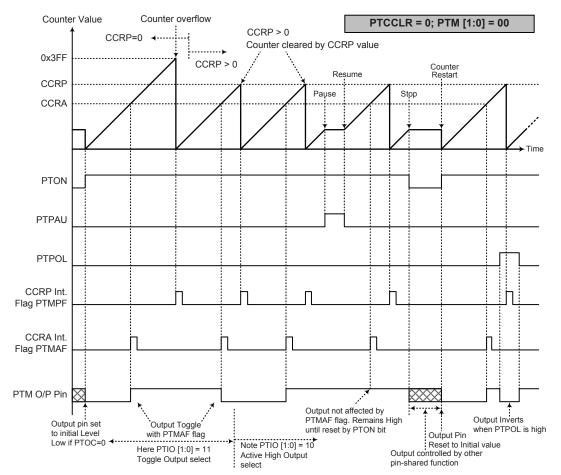
To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register, should be set to 00 respectively. In this mode once the counter is enabled and running it can be cleared by three methods. These are a counter overflow, a compare match from Comparator A and a compare match from Comparator P. When the PTCCLR bit is low, there are two ways in which the counter can be cleared. One is when a compare match from Comparator P, the other is when the CCRP bits are all zero which allows the counter to overflow. Here both PTMAF and PTMPF interrupt request flags for Comparator A and Comparator P respectively, will both be generated.

If the PTCCLR bit in the PTMC1 register is high then the counter will be cleared when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. However, here only the PTMAF interrupt request flag will be generated even if the value of the CCRP bits is less than that of the CCRA registers. Therefore when PTCCLR is high no PTMPF interrupt request flag will be generated. In the Compare Match Output Mode, the CCRA can not be cleared to zero.

If the CCRA bits are all zero, the counter will overflow when it reaches its maximum 10-bit, 3FF Hex, value, however here the PTMAF interrupt request flag will not be generated.

As the name of the mode suggests, after a comparison is made, the PTM output pin, will change state. The PTM output pin condition however only changes state when a PTMAF interrupt request flag is generated after a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The PTMPF interrupt request flag, generated from a compare match occurs from Comparator P, will have no effect on the PTM output pin. The way in which the PTM output pin changes state are determined by the condition of the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits in the PTMC1 register. The PTM output pin can be selected using the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits to go high, to go low or to toggle from its present condition when a compare match occurs from Comparator A. The initial condition of the PTM output pin, which is setup after the PTON bit changes from low to high, is setup using the PTOC bit. Note that if the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are zero then no pin change will take place.





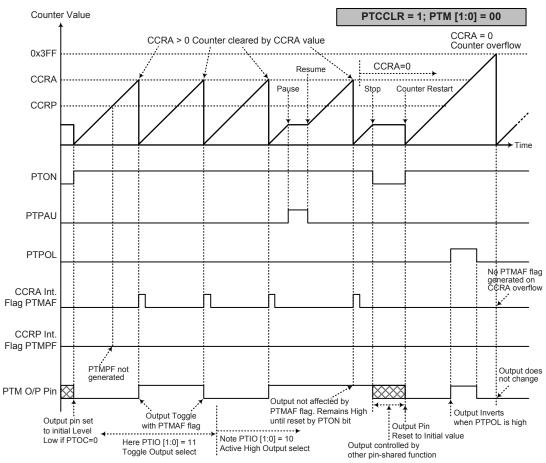
Compare Match Output Mode - PTCCLR = 0

Note: 1. With PTCCLR=0 a Comparator P match will clear the counter

- 2. The PTM output pin is controlled only by the PTMAF flag
- 3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a PTON bit rising edge

Rev. 1.10 86 May 19, 2017





Compare Match Output Mode - PTCCLR = 1

Note: 1. With PTCCLR=1 a Comparator A match will clear the counter

- 2. The PTM output pin is controlled only by the PTMAF flag
- 3. The output pin is reset to its initial state by a PTON bit rising edge
- 4. A PTMPF flag is not generated when PTCCLR=1

# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

#### **Timer/Counter Mode**

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 11 respectively. The Timer/Counter Mode operates in an identical way to the Compare Match Output Mode generating the same interrupt flags. The exception is that in the Timer/Counter Mode the TM output pin is not used. Therefore the above description and Timing Diagrams for the Compare Match Output Mode can be used to understand its function. As the PTM output pins are not used in this mode, the pins can be used as normal I/O pins or other pin-shared functions.

#### **PWM Output Mode**

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 10 respectively. The PWM function within the PTM is useful for applications which require functions such as motor control, heating control, illumination control etc. By providing a signal of fixed frequency but of varying duty cycle on the PTM output pin, a square wave AC waveform can be generated with varying equivalent DC RMS values.

As both the period and duty cycle of the PWM waveform can be controlled, the choice of generated waveform is extremely flexible. In the PWM Output Mode, the PTCCLR bit has no effect on the PWM operation. Both of the CCRA and CCRP registers are used to generate the PWM waveform, one register is used to clear the internal counter and thus control the PWM waveform frequency, while the other one is used to control the duty cycle. The PWM waveform frequency and duty cycle can therefore be controlled by the values in the CCRA and CCRP registers.

An interrupt flag, one for each of the CCRA and CCRP, will be generated when a compare match occurs from either Comparator A or Comparator P. The PTOC bit in the PTMC1 register is used to select the required polarity of the PWM waveform while the two PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are used to enable the PWM output or to force the PTM output pin to a fixed high or low level. The PTPOL bit is used to reverse the polarity of the PWM output waveform.

## • 10-bit PTM, PWM Output Mode, Edge-aligned Mode

| CCRP   | 1~1023 | 0    |
|--------|--------|------|
| Period | 1~1023 | 1024 |
| Duty   | CC     | RA   |

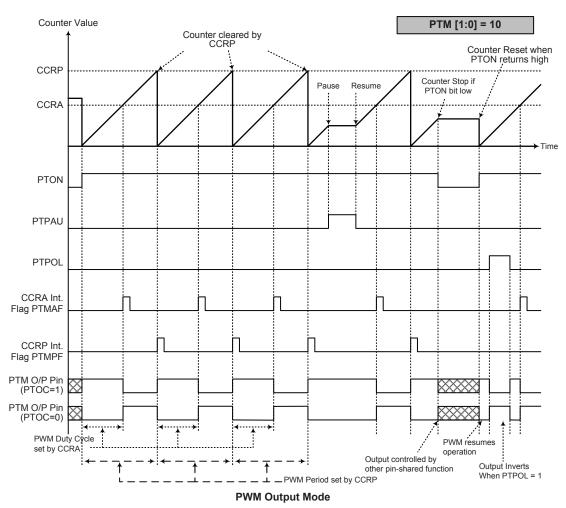
If f<sub>SYS</sub>=16MHz, PTM clock source select f<sub>SYS</sub>/4, CCRP=512 and CCRA=128,

The PTM PWM output frequency=(f<sub>SYS</sub>/4)/512=f<sub>SYS</sub>/2048=7.8125kHz, duty=128/512=25%.

If the Duty value defined by the CCRA register is equal to or greater than the Period value, then the PWM output duty is 100%.

Rev. 1.10 88 May 19, 2017





Note: 1. Counter cleared by CCRP

- 2. A counter clear sets the PWM Period
- 3. The internal PWM function continues running even when PTIO[1:0] = 00 or 01
- 4. The PTCCLR bit has no influence on PWM operation

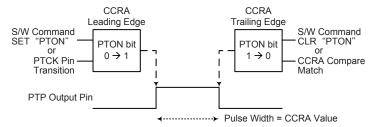


### **Single Pulse Output Mode**

To select this mode, bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 10 respectively and also the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits should be set to 11 respectively. The Single Pulse Output Mode, as the name suggests, will generate a single shot pulse on the PTM output pin.

The trigger for the pulse output leading edge is a low to high transition of the PTON bit, which can be implemented using the application program. However in the Single Pulse Output Mode, the PTON bit can also be made to automatically change from low to high using the external PTCK pin, which will in turn initiate the Single Pulse output. When the PTON bit transitions to a high level, the counter will start running and the pulse leading edge will be generated. The PTON bit should remain high when the pulse is in its active state. The generated pulse trailing edge will be generated when the PTON bit is cleared to zero, which can be implemented using the application program or when a compare match occurs from Comparator A.

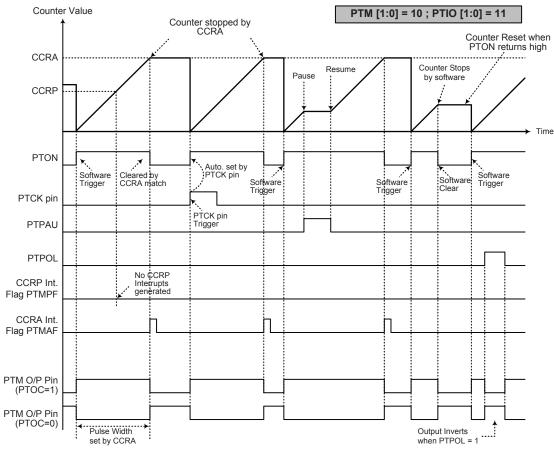
However a compare match from Comparator A will also automatically clear the PTON bit and thus generate the Single Pulse output trailing edge. In this way the CCRA value can be used to control the pulse width. A compare match from Comparator A will also generate a PTM interrupt. The counter can only be reset back to zero when the PTON bit changes from low to high when the counter restarts. In the Single Pulse Output Mode CCRP is not used. The PTCCLR bit is not used in this Mode.



Single Pulse Generation

Rev. 1.10 90 May 19, 2017





Single Pulse Output Mode

Note: 1. Counter stopped by CCRA

- 2. CCRP is not used
- 3. The pulse is triggered by the PTCK pin or by setting the PTON bit high
- 4. A PTCK pin active edge will automatically set the PTON bit high
- 5. In the Single Pulse Output Mode, PTIO[1:0] must be set to "11" and cannot be changed.



# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

#### **Capture Input Mode**

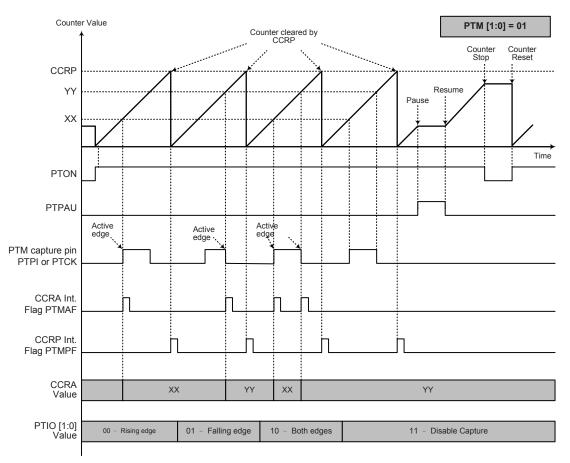
To select this mode bits PTM1 and PTM0 in the PTMC1 register should be set to 01 respectively. This mode enables external signals to capture and store the present value of the internal counter and can therefore be used for applications such as pulse width measurements. The external signal is supplied on the PTPI or PTCK pin which is selected using the PTCAPTS bit in the PTMC1 register. The input pin active edge can be either a rising edge, a falling edge or both rising and falling edges; the active edge transition type is selected using the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits in the PTMC1 register. The counter is started when the PTON bit changes from low to high which is initiated using the application program.

When the required edge transition appears on the PTPI or PTCK pin the present value in the counter will be latched into the CCRA registers and a PTM interrupt generated. Irrespective of what events occur on the PTPI or PTCK pin, the counter will continue to free run until the PTON bit changes from high to low. When a CCRP compare match occurs the counter will reset back to zero; in this way the CCRP value can be used to control the maximum counter value. When a CCRP compare match occurs from Comparator P, a PTM interrupt will also be generated. Counting the number of overflow interrupt signals from the CCRP can be a useful method in measuring long pulse widths. The PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits can select the active trigger edge on the PTPI or PTCK pin to be a rising edge, falling edge or both edge types. If the PTIO1 and PTIO0 bits are both set high, then no capture operation will take place irrespective of what happens on the PTPI or PTCK pin, however it must be noted that the counter will continue to run.

As the PTPI or PTCK pin is pin shared with other functions, care must be taken if the PTM is in the Capture Input Mode. This is because if the pin is setup as an output, then any transitions on this pin may cause an input capture operation to be executed. The PTCCLR, PTOC and PTPOL bits are not used in this Mode.

Rev. 1.10 92 May 19, 2017





## **Capture Input Mode**

- Note: 1. PTM[1:0] = 01 and active edge set by the PTIO[1:0] bits
  - 2. A PTM Capture input pin active edge transfers the counter value to CCRA
  - 3. PTCCLR bit not used
  - 4. No output function PTOC and PTPOL bits are not used
  - 5. CCRP determines the counter value and the counter has a maximum count value when CCRP is equal to



## **RF Transmitter**

The RF transmitter is a fully integrated transmitter, which is capable of using both Frequency-Shift Keying (FSK) and On-Off Keying (OOK) modulation modes for data streaming. It has two main operating modes, Burst Mode and Direct Mode. The RF transmitter operates in the 315/433/868/915MHz frequency bands.

### **RF Transmitter Abbreviation Notes**

CP: Charge Pump

DFC: Digital Frequency Centering

FIFO: TX FIFO

MMD: Multi-Mode Divider PAD: Power Amplifier Driver

SX: Synthesizer

TXD: Data from FIFO or DTXD bit, determined by the DIR\_EN bit

VCO: Voltage Control Oscillator XO: External Crystal Output

XCLK: RF circuit main clock. Controlled by configuring the XO\_SEL[2:0], XODIV2 and XCLKD2

bits and enabled by setting the XCLK EN bit high.

XCLK\_MCU: MCU system clock. Controlled by configuring the XO\_SEL[2:0], XODIV2 and XCLKD2 bits and enabled by setting the HXTEN bit in the HXTC register high.

### **RF Transmitter Control Registers**

The RF transmitter is controlled by a series of registers. These registers control the overall RF function including power down control, operation mode selection, clock division selecton, FIFO data configuration, modulator control, fractional-N synthesizer control, charge pump (CP) control, multi-mode divider (MMD) control, voltage control oscillator (VCO) control, TX power fine tune, VCO DFC calibration, RF LDO control and RF external crystal output, ect.

| Register      |           |          |           | Bit       |         |         |         |           |
|---------------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|
| Name          | 7         | 6        | 5         | 4         | 3       | 2       | 1       | 0         |
| RF_PWR        | _         | _        | _         | _         | _       | _       | _       | RF_PDB    |
| RF_OPER       | _         | _        | FSK_EN    | DIR_EN    | _       | _       | _       | TX_STROBE |
| RF_CLK1       | XCLK_EN   | XCLKINV  | _         | XCLKD2    | _       | _       | _       | RST_RF    |
| RF_CLK2       | DTR7      | DTR6     | DTR5      | DTR4      | DTR3    | DTR2    | DTR1    | DTR0      |
| RF_FIFO_CTRL1 | FFDATA7   | FFDATA6  | FFDATA5   | FFDATA4   | FFDATA3 | FFDATA2 | FFDATA1 | FFDATA0   |
| RF_FIFO_CTRL2 | FFLEN7    | FFLEN6   | FFLEN5    | FFLEN4    | FFLEN3  | FFLEN2  | FFLEN1  | FFLEN0    |
| RF_FIFO_CTRL3 | RST_TX_FF | FFSA6    | FFSA5     | FFSA4     | FFSA3   | FFSA2   | FFSA1   | FFSA0     |
| RF_FIFO_CTRL4 | DTXD      | _        | _         | _         | TXFFLT  | FFMG_EN | FFMG1   | FFMG0     |
| RF_MOD1       | FDEV7     | FDEV6    | FDEV5     | FDEV4     | FDEV3   | FDEV2   | FDEV1   | FDEV0     |
| RF_MOD2       | _         | _        | _         | _         | _       | FTEV10  | FTEV9   | FTEV8     |
| RF_OPMOD      | _         | _        | _         | _         | _       | ACAL_EN | TX_EN   | SX_EN     |
| RF_SX1        | _         | DN6      | DN5       | DN4       | DN3     | DN2     | DN1     | DN0       |
| RF_SX2        | DK7       | DK6      | DK5       | DK4       | DK3     | DK2     | DK1     | DK0       |
| RF_SX3        | DK15      | DK14     | DK13      | DK12      | DK11    | DK10    | DK9     | DK8       |
| RF_SX4        | _         | _        | _         | _         | DK19    | DK18    | DK17    | DK16      |
| RF_CP3        | DLY_SYN2  | DLY_SYN1 | DLY_SYN0  | D4        | D3      | D2      | D1      | D0        |
| RF_OD1        | D7        | D6       | D5        | D4        | D3      | D2      | D1      | D0        |
| RF_OD3        | _         | _        | DLY_SXPD1 | DLY_SXPD0 | _       | D2      | D1      | D0        |
| RF_VCO1       | VCO_SWHB  | D6       | D5        | D4        | D3      | D2      | D1      | D0        |

Rev. 1.10 94 May 19, 2017



| Register   | Bit        |            |          |          |          |           |           |          |  |  |
|------------|------------|------------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|----------|--|--|
| Name       | 7          | 6          | 5        | 4        | 3        | 2         | 1         | 0        |  |  |
| RF_VCO2    | DFCSF      | _          | VCO_DFC4 | VCO_DFC3 | VCO_DFC2 | VCO_DFC1  | VCO_DFC0  | DFC_OW   |  |  |
| RF_TX2     | CT_PAD3    | CT_PAD2    | CT_PAD1  | CT_PAD0  | _        | CT_TXLDO1 | CT_TXLDO0 | D0       |  |  |
| RF_DFC_CAL | CT_MMDLDO1 | CT_MMDLDO0 | _        | D4       | D3       | D2        | D1        | D0       |  |  |
| RF_LDO     | D7         | D6         | D5       | D4       | D3       | D2        | D1        | D0       |  |  |
| RF_XO1     | XSHIFT1    | XSHIFT0    | _        | XO_TRIM4 | XO_TRIM3 | XO_TRIM2  | XO_TRIM1  | XO_TRIM0 |  |  |
| RF_XO2     | _          | D6         | D5       | _        | XODIV2   | XO_SEL2   | XO_SEL1   | XO_SEL0  |  |  |

#### **RF Transmitter Control Registers List**

Most of the RF transmitter control register details will be described in this section, however several registers will be described in their respective other sections.

### RF\_PWR Register - RF Power Down Control Register

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0      |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | RF_PDB |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W    |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0      |

Bit 7~1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **RF\_PDB**: RF power down control

0: RF Power down mode
1: RF Active mode

This bit determines whether the RF circuit is in the active or power down mode. This bit will be cleared to 0 when a power on reset, a LVR reset or a WDT time-out during normal operation occurs or when the MCU enters the DEEP SLEEP Mode by setting the PWDN bit in the PWRC register to 1 and executing a HALT instruction.

### RF\_CLK1 Register - RF Clock Control Register 1

| Bit  | 7       | 6       | 5 | 4      | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0      |
|------|---------|---------|---|--------|---|---|---|--------|
| Name | XCLK_EN | XCLKINV | - | XCLKD2 | _ | _ | _ | RST_RF |
| R/W  | R/W     | R/W     | _ | R/W    | _ | _ | _ | R/W    |
| POR  | 1       | 0       | - | 0      | - | _ | _ | 0      |

Bit 7 XCLK\_EN: Clock auto gating for the RF internal digital circuit

0: Disable 1: Enable

Writing data to the FIFO requires enabling XCLK. The XCLK\_EN bit should be cleared before the RF circuit enters the power down mode with the RF\_PDB bit cleared, this will prevent XCLK clock glitch from occurring and guarantee that the XCLK domain register will not affected by the clock lost.

Bit 6 XCLKINV: XCLK clock invert control

0: XCLK clock does not invert

1: XCLK clock inverts

Bit 5 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 4 XCLKD2: XCLK clock divided by 2 control

0: XCLK clock is not divided by 21: XCLK clock is divided by 2

It is recommended to clear this bit to zero.

Bit 3~1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 RST\_RF: Reset RF control register

0: Self-clear RF control register is complete

1: Reset RF control register

When this bit is set to 1, all RF associated registers except the RF\_PWR register will be reset. It needs one instruction cycle to complete the self-clear enable action. Do not set the RST\_RF bit high in two continuous instructions.



## RF\_CLK2 Register - RF Clock Control Register 2

| Bit  | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0    |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Name | DTR7 | DTR6 | DTR5 | DTR4 | DTR3 | DTR2 | DTR1 | DTR0 |
| R/W  |
| POR  | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    |

Bit 7~0 DTR7~DTR0: RF data rate setting

RF data rate = 100kHz/(DTR[7:0]+1)

Note: The XO SEL[2:0] bits and the XODIV2 bit in the RF XO2 register should first be set to get the correct reference clock.

## RF\_CP3 Register – RF CP Control Register 3

| Bit  | 7        | 6        | 5        | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|----------|----------|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | DLY_SYN2 | DLY_SYN1 | DLY_SYN0 | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W      | R/W      | R/W      | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 1        | 1        | 0        | 0   | 1   | 0   | 1   | 0   |

Bit 7~5 DLY\_SYN2~DLY\_SYN0: Synthesiser delay get ready time

000: 16μs

001: 20μs

010: 24µs

011: 28µs

100: 32μs 101: 36µs

110: 40µs

111: 100 µs

Bit 4~3 D4~D0: Reserved bits – must remain at POR setting

These bits are reserved and must not be changed by the user.

### RF\_OD1 Register - RF MMD and OD Control Register 1

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D7  | D6  | D5  | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 1   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: Multi-mode divider and output division

This register is used to control the multi-mode divider and output division in the RF circuitry. Note that different setting values should be written into this register for different RF frequency band applications. The recommended setting values are summarised in the following.

| RF Frequency Band     | 315MHz | 433MHz | 868/915MHz |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|------------|
| RF OD1 Setting Values | 08H    | 04H    | 00H        |

## RF\_OD3 Register - RF MMD and OD Control Register 3

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5             | 4             | 3 | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|---|---|---------------|---------------|---|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | _ | _ | DLY_<br>SXPD1 | DLY_<br>SXPD0 | _ | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | _ | _ | R/W           | R/W           | _ | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | _ | _ | 0             | 1             | _ | 1   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Rev. 1.10 96 May 19, 2017



Bit  $5\sim4$  **DLY\_SXPD1~DLY\_SXPD0**: Delay time for SX\_EN  $(1\rightarrow0)$ 

00: 25μs 01: 50μs 10: 75μs 11: 100μs

Bit 3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2~0 **D2~D0**: Reserved bits – must remain at POR setting.

These bits are reserved and must not be changed by the user.

### RF\_VCO1 Register - RF VCO Control Register 1

| Bit  | 7            | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | VCO_<br>SWHB | D6  | D5  | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W          | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0            | 0   | 0   | 1   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7 VCO\_SWHB: VCO 2.5GHz frequency band switch control

0: Other frequency bands

1: 315MHz Band

This bit is used to select the VCO 315MHz frequency band. If this bit is set to 1, the VCO 315MHz is selected. Other VCO frequency bands except 315MHz will be selected when this bit is set to 0.

Bit 6~0 **D6~D0**: Frequency Band control.

Note that different setting values should be written into this register for different RF frequency band applications. The recommended setting values are summarized in the following.

| RF Frequency Band      | 315MHz | 433MHz | 868/915MHz |
|------------------------|--------|--------|------------|
| RF_VCO1 Setting Values | 90H    | 10H    | 10H        |

#### RF\_VCO2 Register - RF VCO Control Register 2

| Bit  | 7     | 6 | 5        | 4        | 3        | 2        | 1        | 0      |
|------|-------|---|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--------|
| Name | DFCSF | _ | VCO_DFC4 | VCO_DFC3 | VCO_DFC2 | VCO_DFC1 | VCO_DFC0 | DFC_OW |
| R/W  | R     | _ | R/W      | R/W      | R/W      | R/W      | R/W      | R/W    |
| POR  | 0     | _ | 1        | 0        | 0        | 0        | 0        | 0      |

Bit 7 **DFCSF**: DFC select failure flag – read only

This bit status is updated after the VCO calibration has completed. If the calibration result exceeds the DFC curve design range, this bit will be set high to indicate that no DFC is found in the current selected channel. If the DFC has failed, it means the VCO can not operate at the desired frequency or there may be other abnormalies.

Bit 6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5~1 VCO DFC4~ VCO DFC0: VCO DFC curve trim value

00000: Minimum frequency

↓ : ↓

11111: Maximum frequency

These bits are used to set the various capacitor array values corresponding to different frequency bands to increase the VCO frequency covering range. The larger the field value is set, the higher VCO frequency is obtained. The VCO DFC trim value in this bit field can be determined by the software manual setting or hardware auto calibration fitting selected by the DFC OW bit.

Bit 0 **DFC\_OW**: VCO DFC curve trim value source selection

0: VCO DFC curve trim value is determined by auto calibration result

1: VCO DFC curve trim value is determined by manual setting

# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

This bit is used to select the VCO DFC curve trim value source. When this bit is set to 0, the VCO DFC curve trim value will be derived from the auto calibration result regardless of the VCO\_DFC bit field value. However, the VCO DFC curve trim value will be determined by the VCO\_DFC bit field value rather than the auto calibration result when this bit is set to 1. When this bit is set to 0, the VCO\_DFC bit field will return the auto calibration result for the VCO DFC curve trim value if a VCO\_DFC field read operation is executed.

Two examples for implementing a DFC calibration are provided below.

- Implement DFC calibration after each power on condition
  - Step 1: System power on reset, DFC OW=0 and RF PDB=0 by default option
  - Step 2: Set ACAL\_EN=1 to enable the auto DFC calibration, and wait until ACAL\_EN is cleared to 0
  - Step 3: RF enters power down mode because RF PDB=0
  - Step 4: RF is powered on by setting RF\_PDB=1 and keep DFC\_OW=0
  - Step 5: Set ACAL\_EN=1 to enable the auto DFC calibration, and wait until ACAL\_EN is cleared to 0
- · Implement DFC calibration only after a system power on reset
  - Step 1: System power on reset, DFC\_OW=0 and RF\_PDB=0 by default option
  - Step 2: RF is powered on by setting RF\_PDB=1
  - Step 3: Set ACAL\_EN=1 to enable the auto DFC calibration, and wait until ACAL\_EN is cleared to 0
  - Step 4: Backup VCO\_DFC[4:0] to RAM
  - Step 5: RF enters power down mode by setting RF\_PDB=0
  - Step 6: RF is powered on by setting RF\_PDB=1 and keep DFC\_OW=0
  - Step 7: Restore VCO DFC[4:0] from RAM
  - Step 8: Set DFC OW=1

### RF\_TX2 Register - RF TX Control Register 2

| Bit  | 7       | 6       | 5       | 4       | 3 | 2         | 1         | 0   |
|------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---|-----------|-----------|-----|
| Name | CT_PAD3 | CT_PAD2 | CT_PAD1 | CT_PAD0 | _ | CT_TXLDO1 | CT_TXLDO0 | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W     | R/W     | R/W     | R/W     | _ | R/W       | R/W       | R/W |
| POR  | 1       | 1       | 0       | 1       | _ | 0         | 0         | 0   |

#### Bit 7~4 CT PAD3~CT PAD0: TX PAD linear power control

| CT_PAD[3:0] | Output Power Fine Tune | CT_PAD[3:0] | Output Power Fine Tune |
|-------------|------------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| 1100        | 0dBm_L3                | 0101        | 10dBm_L1               |
| 1000        | 0dBm_L2                | 0001        | 10dBm_L0               |
| 0100        | 0dBm_L1                | 111x        | 13dBm_L3               |
| 0000        | 0dBm_L0                | 101x        | 13dBm_L2               |
| 1101        | 10dBm_L3               | 011x        | 13dBm_L1               |
| 1001        | 10dBm_L2               | 001x        | 13dBm_L0               |

Note: 1. xdBm L0~xdBm L3 are used for output power fine tune.

2. Power consumption: xdBm L0 > xdBm L1 > xdBm L2 > xdBm L3.

Bit 3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2~1 CT\_TXLDO: XO LDO voltage setting

00: 1.35V 01: 1.5V 10: 1.65V 11: 1.8V

Bit 0 **D0**: Reserved bits

Rev. 1.10 98 May 19, 2017



### RF\_DFC\_CAL Register - RF VCO DFC Calibration Control Register

| Bit  | 7          | 6          | 5 | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|------------|------------|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | CT_MMDLDO1 | CT_MMDLDO0 | _ | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W        | R/W        | _ | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0          | 0          | _ | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~6 CT\_MMDLDO1~CT\_MMDLDO0: MMD LDO voltage setting

00: 1.35V 01: 1.5V 10: 1.65V 11: 1.8V

Bit 5 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 4~0 **D4~D0**: Reserved bits – must remain at the POR setting
These bits are reserved and must not be changed by the user.

## RF\_LDO Register - RF LDO Control Register

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | D7  | D6  | D5  | D4  | D3  | D2  | D1  | D0  |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 1   | 1   | 0   | 0   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **D7~D0**: RF synthesizer and VCO LDO function control

This register is used to control the overall LDO functions for the RF synthesizer and VCO circuitry. Note that different setting values should be written into this register for different RF frequency band applications. The recommended setting values are summarised in the following.

| RF Frequency Band     | 315MHz | 433MHz | 868/915MHz |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|------------|
| RF_LDO Setting Values | 18H    | 18H    | 14H        |

### RF\_XO1 Register - RF XO Control Register 1

| Bit  | 7       | 6       | 5 | 4            | 3            | 2            | 1            | 0            |
|------|---------|---------|---|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| Name | XSHIFT1 | XSHIFT0 | _ | XO_<br>TRIM4 | XO_<br>TRIM3 | XO_<br>TRIM2 | XO_<br>TRIM1 | XO_<br>TRIM0 |
| R/W  | R/W     | R/W     | _ | R/W          | R/W          | R/W          | R/W          | R/W          |
| POR  | 1       | 0       | _ | 1            | 0            | 1            | 0            | 1            |

Bit 7 XSHIFT[1:0]: Internal capacitor load coarse shift for the crystal oscillator

Capacitor step = 4.5pF, XSHIFT field value =  $0 \sim 3$ 

Total Capacitor load≈7 + XSHIFT[1:0]×4.5 + XO\_TRIM[4:0]×0.2, unit: pF

Bit 5 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 4~0 **XO\_TRIM[5**:0]: Internal capacitor load trim value for the crystal oscillator

Capacitor step = 0.2pF, XO TRIM field value =  $0 \sim 31$ 

Total Capacitor load≈7 + XSHIFT[1:0]×4.5 + XO\_TRIM[4:0]×0.2, unit: pF

# RF\_XO2 Register – RF XO Control Register 2

| Bit  | 7 | 6   | 5   | 4 | 3      | 2       | 1       | 0       |
|------|---|-----|-----|---|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| Name | _ | D6  | D5  | _ | XODIV2 | XO_SEL2 | XO_SEL1 | XO_SEL0 |
| R/W  | _ | R/W | R/W | _ | R/W    | R/W     | R/W     | R/W     |
| POR  | _ | 0   | 1   | _ | 0      | 0       | 1       | 1       |

Bit7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6~5 **D6~D5**: Reserved bits – must remain at the POR setting These bits are reserved and must not be changed by the user.



# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

Bit 4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 **XODIV2**: XO output divided by 2 selection

0: Without any division

1: Divided by 2

It is recommended to clear this bit to zero.

Bit 2~0 XO\_SEL2~XO\_SEL0: XO output selection

000: 12MHz 001: 12.8MHz 010: Reserved 011: 16MHz 100: 19.2MHz 101/110/111: Reserved

The external crystal should be properly selected using the XODIV2 and XO\_SEL bit field. Different setting values should be written into this register for different external crystal selections and RF frequency band applications. The recommended setting values are summarised in the following.

| RF Frequency Band<br>External<br>Crystal Selection | 315MHz    | 433MHz    | 868/915MHz |
|--|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 12MHz  | 0010 0000 | 0010 0000 | 0100 0000  |
| 12.8MHz  | 0010 0001 | 0010 0001 | 0100 0001  |
| 16MHz  | 0010 0011 | 0010 x011 | 0100 x011  |
| 19.2MHz  | 0010 0100 | 0010 x100 | 0100 x100  |

"x": 0 or 1

## **Modulation Modes and Operating Modes Selection**

· Modulation Modes

There are two RF modulation modes for the devices, FSK mode and OOK mode, which are selected by the FSK EN bit.

In the OOK modulation mode, the RFOUT pin outputs the RF carry signal with a frequency  $f_C$  that is selected by channel code DN[6:0] and DK[19:0]. The RF carry signal on/off is controlled by transmitting data at the required data rate.

In the FSK modulation mode, the RFOUT pin outputs the RF signal with ( $f_C$ + $f_{DEV}$ ) for data "1" and ( $f_C$ - $f_{DEV}$ ) for data "0". The RF carry signal on/off is controlled by transmitting data at the determined data rate.

· Operating Modes

There are two RF operating modes for the devices, Burst Mode and Direct Mode, which are selected by the DIR EN bit.

In the Burst Mode, the data to be transmitted is from the FIFO and the RF block is controlled by a state machine. Users just need to write data to the FIFO and set the TX\_STROBE bit high to start the transmission and wait for its completion. This is an easy mode to use.

In the Direct Mode, the data to be transmitted is configured by the DTXD bit in the RF\_FIFO\_CTRL4 register. The on/off timing for the RF functional block is controlled by specific program squences as described below. This mode provides the maximum flexibility but requires users to take more attention to the block control and data to be transmitted.

Rev. 1.10 100 May 19, 2017



### RF\_OPER Register - RF Operation Control Register

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5      | 4      | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0         |
|------|---|---|--------|--------|---|---|---|-----------|
| Name | _ | _ | FSK_EN | DIR_EN | _ | _ | _ | TX_STROBE |
| R/W  | _ | _ | R/W    | R/W    | _ | _ | _ | R/W       |
| POR  | _ | _ | 0      | 0      | _ | _ | _ | 0         |

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 FSK\_EN: RF output modulation mode selection

0: OOK Mode, PAD enable is controlled by TXD directly

1: FSK Mode, PAD enable is forced to 1 and TXD modulates the TX frequency

Bit 4 **DIR\_EN**: RF output operating mode selection

0: Burst Mode, TX data is read from FIFO, RF is controlled by state machine (if FIFO transmission is complete, RF TX will enter the standby mode)

 Direct Mode, TX data comes from DTXD bit in the RF\_FIFO\_CTRL4 register directly and RF state is controlled by SX\_EN (first enable) and TX\_EN (second enable)

Bit 3~1 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 0 **TX STROBE**: TX strobe to start the burst mode data transfer from RF

0: TX packet has been sent completely

1: Initial a TX transmission

Setting this bit high will initial the TX transmission procedure automatically, in which condition, all register settings are not allowed to change. This bit will be cleared to 0 automatically when a TX packet has been sent completely, in which condition, a BMTCF interrupt request will be generated. Users should start the next transmission after this bit returns to 0. Users can force the TX transmission to teminate by writting a 0 value to this bit.

# RF\_MOD1 Register - RF Modulator Control Register 1

| Bit  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | FDEV7 | FDEV6 | FDEV5 | FDEV4 | FDEV3 | FDEV2 | FDEV1 | FDEV0 |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | 1     | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7~0 **FDEV7~FDEV0**: Set the frequency deviation in FSK mode

These bits together with the FDEV10~FDEV9 bits in the RF\_MOD2 register set the frequency deviation in FSK mode.

### RF\_MOD2 Register - RF Modulator Control Register 2

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2      | 1     | 0     |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|--------|-------|-------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | FDEV10 | FDEV9 | FDEV8 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W    | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0      | 0     | 1     |

Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2~0 FDEV10~FDEV8: Set the frequency deviation in FSK mode

These bits together with the FDEV7~FDEV0 bits in the RF\_MOD1 register set the frequency deviation in FSK mode.

FDEV[10:0]=DEC2HEX (INT( $(2^{17}-1)/f_{XTAL})\times f_D$ ))

For example, if f<sub>XTAL</sub>=16MHz, XODIV2=0, f<sub>D</sub>=50kHz, then FDEV[10:0]=19BH.



# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

# RF\_OPMOD Register - RF Operation Mode Control Register

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2       | 1     | 0     |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---------|-------|-------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | ACAL_EN | TX_EN | SX_EN |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W     | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0       | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2 ACAL\_EN: Auto calibration enable control

0: Disable 1: Enable

This bit can be set or reset by the application program to activate or terminate the auto calibration function. It will automatically be cleared to 0 by hardware when the auto calibration is completed.

Bit 1 TX EN: Transmitter control (for Direct Mode only)

0: Disable 1: Enable

This bit is only used in the Direct Mode, it is not used in the Burst Mode.

Bit 0 SX EN: Synthesizer (PLL On) control (for Direct Mode only)

0: Disable 1: Enable

This bit is only used in the Direct Mode, it is not used in the Burst Mode.

## **TX FIFO Mode in Burst Mode**

In the Burst mode, the data to be transmitted comes from the FIFO into which data is pre-written by the MCU. There are three FIFO modes to support various applications. These are Simple FIFO mode, Block FIFO mode and Extend FIFO mode. To use the FIFO in the burst mode, set the RST\_TX\_FF bit in the RF\_FIFO\_CTRL3 register to 1 to reset the FIFO pointer and buffer. After this, the FIFO is in the initial state same as power on reset.

#### · Simple FIFO Mode

This FIFO mode is used in general applications. The data length should not exceed 128 bytes. To use the simple FIFO mode, the MCU must write the data to be transmitted to the FIFO by accessing the RF\_FIFO\_CTRL1 register (FFDATA[7:0]). The transmit sequence to the transmitter is first written byte first out and is MSB first out in each byte. Users should first determine the transmit data packet format such as the preamble, ID code and packet encoding such as the FEC (Forward Error Correction), CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check), whiting and etc. After the FIFO has been filled completely, set the FFSA[6:0] bits in the RF\_FIFO\_CTRL3 register to 0 and configure the RF\_FIFO\_CTRL2 register FFLEN[7:0] to the desire transmition length in bytes. Then configure the FSK\_EN, DIR\_EN and TX\_STROBE bits to start the transmission. After the current transmition is complete, the data will be kept in the FIFO to wait for next transmission.

#### · Block FIFO Mode

The Bock FIFO mode is used to support multi-key code applications. Users should write all the key code to the FIFO beforehand. When a key is pressed, the MCU will detect the key, set the RF\_FIFO\_CTRL3 register FFSA[6:0] to the start address of the target key code, and then set the RF\_FIFO\_CTRL2 register FFLEN[7:0] to indicate the key code length and finally set the TX\_STROBE bit in the RF\_OPER register to start the transmission. The maximum FIFO length is also limited to 128 bytes.

Rev. 1.10 102 May 19, 2017



#### · Extend FIFO Mode

The Extend FIFO mode is used for large data packet length up to 256 bytes. The physical FIFO length is 128 bytes. To extend the available transmit length in one packet, a handshake mechanism is needed between the MCU and FIFO.

Set the FFMG[1:0] bits in the RF\_FIFO\_CTRL4 register to determine the FIFO data length margin and set the FFMG\_EN bit to enable the margin detect function to remind the MCU. The MCU should write data to FIFO as soon as possible when receiving this remind signal, to avoid the transmission being terminated by FIFO data length low to zero.

## RF\_FIFO\_CTRL1 Register - RF FIFO Control Register 1

| Bit  | 7       | 6       | 5       | 4       | 3       | 2       | 1       | 0       |
|------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Name | FFDATA7 | FFDATA6 | FFDATA5 | FFDATA4 | FFDATA3 | FFDATA2 | FFDATA1 | FFDATA0 |
| R/W  | W       | W       | W       | W       | W       | W       | W       | W       |
| POR  | 0       | 0       | 0       | 0       | 0       | 0       | 0       | 0       |

### Bit 7~0 FFDATA7~FFDATA0: FIFO data port

Writing data to this port will write data to the FIFO. Reading data from this port will read data from the top of the FIFO.

### RF\_FIFO\_CTRL2 Register - RF FIFO Control Register 2

| Bit  | 7      | 6      | 5      | 4      | 3      | 2      | 1      | 0      |
|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Name | FFLEN7 | FFLEN6 | FFLEN5 | FFLEN4 | FFLEN3 | FFLEN2 | FFLEN1 | FFLEN0 |
| R/W  | R/W    | R/W    | R/W    | R/W    | R/W    | R/W    | R/W    | R/W    |
| POR  | 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      |

### Bit 7~0 FFLEN7~FFLEN0: TX data length (used for Burst mode only)

The number of data bytes to be transmitted is FFLEN[7:0]+1. In the Simple FIFO mode and Block FIFO mode, the FFLEN[7:0] is limited to 7Fh. Users should not set this register to be greater than this value.

### RF\_FIFO\_CTRL3 Register - RF FIFO Control Register 3

| Bit  | 7         | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | RST_TX_FF | FFSA6 | FFSA5 | FFSA4 | FFSA3 | FFSA2 | FFSA1 | FFSA0 |
| R/W  | R/W       | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | 0         | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     |

### Bit 7 RST TX FF: Reset TX FIFO

0: Do not reset TXFIFO to its initial state or the reset action is completed

1: Reset TX FIFO to initial state

Setting this bit high will reset the TX FIFO to its initial state. After the reset action is complete, this bit will be automatically cleared.

Bit 6~0 FFSA7~FFSA0: FIFO start address to send out data – used for the Block FIFO mode

Rev. 1.10 103 May 19, 2017

## RF\_FIFO\_CTRL4 Register - RF FIFO Control Register 4

| Bit  | 7    | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3      | 2       | 1     | 0     |
|------|------|---|---|---|--------|---------|-------|-------|
| Name | DTXD | _ | _ | _ | TXFFLT | FFMG_EN | FFMG1 | FFMG0 |
| R/W  | R/W  | _ | _ | _ | R      | R/W     | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | 0    | _ | _ |   | 0      | 0       | 0     | 1     |

Bit 7 **DTXD**: Direct mode TX data setting

Bit 6~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3 TXFFLT: TX FIFO length less than the threshold length specified by FFMG[1:0] (read only)

0: TX FIFO length is greater than the threshold length specified by FFMG[1:0]

1: TX FIFO length is less than or equal to threshold length specified by FFMG[1:0]

If the FFMG\_EN bit equals to 0, the TXFFLT bit always keeps at 0. If the FFMG\_EN bit equals to 1, the TXFFLT bit indicates the TX FIFO length status. When this bit is set high by hardware, it indicates that the TX FIFO length is less than or equal to the threshold length specified by FFMG[1:0], in which case, an FFMGF interrupt request will be generated.

will be generated.

Bit 2 FFMG\_EN: TX FIFO length margin detect enable

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 1~0 FFMG1~FFMG0: TX FIFO length margin - indicates the remained number of data

bytes in the FIFO 00: 4 bytes 01: 8 bytes

10: 16 bytes 11: 32 bytes

## **RF Channel Setup**

The RF channel setup is implemented using four registers, the RF SX1 ~ RF SX4 registers.

## RF\_SX1 Register - RF Fractional-N Synthesizer Control Register 1

| Bit  | 7 | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|---|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | _ | DN6 | DN5 | DN4 | DN3 | DN2 | DN1 | DN0 |
| R/W  | _ | R/W |
| POR  | _ | 0   | 1   | 1   | 0   | 1   | 1   | 0   |

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6~0 **DN6~DN0**: Integer of dividend for MMD, supports 32 to 127

Since the MMD data is generated from a delta-sigma modulator, the DN support range will be affected. The real range will be  $(32+3) \sim (127-4)$ , i.e.  $35\sim123$ .

Set initial value to XO=16MHz and TX band=433.92MHz:

For example, if Crystal=XO=16MHz, XODIV2=0, and RF\_OD1=04H;

VCO frequency=TX frequency×4=433.92MHz×4=1735.68MHz;

XO×(DN+DK/2<sup>20</sup>)=16MHz×(DN+DK/2<sup>20</sup>)=VCO frequency/2=1735.68Mhz/2

=867.84MHz;

 $(DN+DK/2^{20})=54.24$ , so DN[6:0]=36H=54, DK[19:0]=3D70AH=251658.

Rev. 1.10 104 May 19, 2017



## RF\_SX2 Register - RF Fractional-N Synthesizer Control Register 2

| Bit  | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Name | DK7 | DK6 | DK5 | DK4 | DK3 | DK2 | DK1 | DK0 |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 1   | 0   | 1   | 0   |

Bit 7~0 **DK7~DK0**: Low byte of 20-bit fractional of dividend for MMD Set an initial value to implement XO=16MHz and TX band=433.92MHz.

#### RF\_SX3 Register - RF Fractional-N Synthesizer Control Register 3

| Bit  | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1   | 0   |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|-----|-----|
| Name | DK15 | DK14 | DK13 | DK12 | DK11 | DK10 | DK9 | DK8 |
| R/W  | R/W | R/W |
| POR  | 1    | 1    | 0    | 1    | 0    | 1    | 1   | 1   |

Bit 7~0 **DK15~DK8**: Middle byte of 20-bit fractional of dividend for MMD Set an initial value to implement XO=16MHz and TX band=433.92MHz.

### RF\_SX4 Register - RF Fractional-N Synthesizer Control Register 4

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0    |
|------|---|---|---|---|------|------|------|------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | DK19 | DK18 | DK17 | DK16 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W  | R/W  | R/W  | R/W  |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0    | 0    | 1    | 1    |

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~0 **DK19~DK8**: High byte of 20-bit fractional of dividend for MMD Set an initial value to implement XO=16MHz and TX band=433.92MHz.

### RF Channel Setup Description (VCO operating frequency: 1.7~1.9GHz, 2.5GHz)

The XODIV2 bit and the RF\_OD1 register must be configured according to the following two rules:

- Whether the the VCO operating frequency is in the specified range.
- The calculated DN and DK values are within the available range of RF SX1~RF SX4 registers.

The following are five frequency configuration examples (if Crystal=XO=16MHz):

(1) 315MHz

XODIV2=0, RF\_OD1=08H

VCO frequency=TX Frequency×8=315MHz×8=2520MHz

XO×(DN+DK/2<sup>20</sup>) =16MHz×(DN+DK/2<sup>20</sup>)=VCO frequency/2=2520MHz/2=1260MHz

 $(DN+DK/2^{20})=78.75 \rightarrow DN[6:0]=4EH=78, DK[19:0]=C0000H=786432$ 

Note: The VCO\_SWHB bit should be set to "1" by the user program for switching the VCO to the 2.5GHz band when the TX frequency is 315MHz.

(2) 433MHz

XODIV2=0, RF\_OD1=04H

VCO frequency=TX Frequency×4=433MHz×4=1732MHz

 $XO \times (DN + DK/2^{20}) = 16MHz \times (DN + DK/2^{20}) = VCO \ frequency/2 = 1732MHz/2 = 866MHz$ 

 $(DN+DK/2^{20})=54.125 \rightarrow DN[6:0]=36H=54, DK[19:0]=20000H=131072$ 



# BC68F2130/BC68F2140 Sub-1GHz RF Transmitter Flash MCU

(3) 433.92MHz (default setting)

XODIV2=0, RF OD1=04H

VCO frequency=TX Frequency×4=433.92MHz×4=1735.68MHz

XO×(DN+DK/2<sup>20</sup>)=16MHz×(DN+DK/2<sup>20</sup>)=VCO frequency/2=1735.68MHz/2=867.84MHz

 $(DN+DK/2^{20})=54.24 \rightarrow DN[6:0]=36H=54, DK[19:0]=3D70AH=251658$ 

(4) 868MHz

XODIV2=0, RF OD1=00H

VCO frequency=TX Frequency×2=868MHz×2=1736MHz

XO×(DN+DK/(220))=16MHz×(DN+DK/(220))=VCO frequency/2=1736MHz/2=868MHz

 $(DN+DK/(220))=54.25 \rightarrow DN[6:0]=36H=54, DK[19:0]=40000H=262144$ 

(5) 915MHz

XODIV2=0, RF\_OD1=00H

VCO frequency=TX Frequency×2=915MHz×2=1830MHz

XO×(DN+DK/2<sup>20</sup>)=16MHz×(DN+DK/2<sup>20</sup>)=VCO frequency/2=1830MHz/2=915MHz

 $(DN+DK/2^{20})=57.1875 \rightarrow DN[6:0]=39H=57, DK[19:0]=30000H=196608$ 

# **Software Programming Guide**

In order to help users to implement the desired transmission, this section provides the reference setup steps for the Burst mode and Direct Mode. The differences between these two modes are the generation of the data to be transmitted and the RF block on/off control, more details are described below.

- · Burst Mode
  - 1. Set the XO\_SEL[2:0], XODIV2 and XCLKD2 bits properly according to the selected crystal oscillator.
  - 2. Set the RF\_PDB bit to 1 and the RF circuit will start to operate with the XCLK clock since the XCLK EN bit has a default value of 1.
  - 3. If users selected HXT as the system clock source, check the HXTF bit. When this bit is equal to 1 it indicates that the MCU clock is ready. The MCU can use the XCLK\_MCU clock as its main clock.
  - 4. Set the RF related configuration registers.
  - 5. If it is the first time to power up or the operation environment has large variations, set the ACAL\_EN bit in the RF\_OPMOD register to start an auto calibration process and poll this bit to wait for the end of the calibration process. Read the value of the VCO\_DFC[4:0] bits in the RF\_VCO2 register and store it in backup RAM. This action is to save the calibration time when the MCU or RF circuit enters the power down mode. This data will be restored to VCO\_DFC[4:0] by a write access to this bit field. Then set the DFC\_OW bit in the same register to 1 to force the DFC to select this curve.
  - 6. Write data to the FIFO. Set FFLEN[7:0] for the desired transmition length in bytes. Set DTR[7:0] for the data rate. Set FDEV[10:0] for the frequency deviation in FSK mode.

Rev. 1.10 106 May 19, 2017



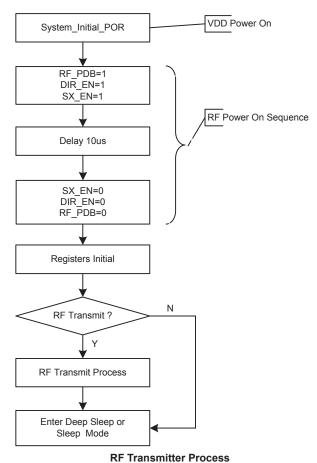
- 7. Set DIR\_EN=0 to select the Burst Mode, set FSK\_EN=0(OOK)/1(FSK), set TX\_STROBE=1 to start the transmission. Then the data in FIFO will be automatically transferred to the RFOUT pin with FSK or OOK modulation.
- 8. Poll the TX\_STROBE bit until it is cleared to 0 by hardware. When the TX\_STROBE bit equals to 1, any write accesses to RF configuration registers are not allowed.
- 9. If users want to resend the previous data, just check the TX\_STROBE bit, when it is in a low state set it to 1 again to initial another transmission.
- 10. If TX\_STROBE is in a high state and users want to forcely terminate this transmission, just set the TX\_STROBE to low then wait at least 1µs to let the state machine turn off the Power Amplifier Driver. Then users can re-set TX\_STROBE to start a new transmission.
- 11. Set XCLK EN=0 then clear RF PDB to low to turn off the RF circuit.

#### · Direct Mode:

- 1. Set the XO\_SEL[2:0], XODIV2 and XCLKD2 bits properly according to the selected crystal oscillator.
- 2. Set the RF\_PDB bit to 1 and the RF circuit will start to operate with the XCLK clock since the XCLK EN bit has a default value of 1.
- 3. If HXT is selected as the system clock source, check the HXTF bit. When this bit is equal to 1 this indicates that the MCU clock is ready. The MCU can use the XCLK\_MCU clock as its main clock.
- 4. Set the RF related configuration registers.
- 5. If it is the first time to power up or the operation environment has large variations, set the ACAL\_EN bit in the RF\_OPMOD register to start the auto calibration process and poll this bit to wait for the end of the calibration process. Read the value of the VCO\_DFC[4:0] bits in the RF\_VCO2 register and store it in backup RAM. This action is to save the calibration time when the MCU or RF circuit enters the power down mode. This data will be restored to VCO\_DFC[4:0] by a write access to this bit field. Then set the DFC\_OW bit in the same register to 1 to force the DFC to select this curve.
- 6. Write the DTXD bit with the first data bit to be transmitted. Set FDEV[10:0] for the frequency deviation in the FSK mode.
- 7. Set DIR EN=1 to select the Direct Mode, set FSK EN=0(OOK)/1(FSK).
- 8. Set the SX\_EN bit to enable all the synthesizer block functions and implement a delay time to wait for the synthesizer to stabilise.
- Set the TX\_EN bit to enable the Power Amplifier block function and then start to transmit data via the RFOUT pin.
- 10. Continue to update the DTXD bit with a desired data rate until all data transmissions are completed.
- 11. Set TX EN=0 and delay 1µs, then set SX EN=0.
- 12. Set XCLK\_EN=0 then clear RF\_PDB to low to turn off the RF circuit.



Note: When in the Direct Mode and a data transfer has completed, to allow the RF circuit to enter the power down mode to save power consumption, users must configure the related bits in the correct order as described in step11 and step12, otherwise an undesirable standby current will be generated.



Rev. 1.10 108 May 19, 2017



## Interrupts

Interrupts are an important part of any microcontroller system. When an external event or an internal function such as a Timer Module requires microcontroller attention, their corresponding interrupt will enforce a temporary suspension of the main program allowing the microcontroller to direct attention to their respective needs. The device contains several external interrupt and internal interrupt functions. The external interrupts are generated by the action of the external INT0~INT1 pins, while the internal interrupts are generated by various internal functions such as the TMs, LVD and Timebase, etc.

### **Interrupt Registers**

Overall interrupt control, which basically means the setting of request flags when certain microcontroller conditions occur and the setting of interrupt enable bits by the application program, is controlled by a series of registers, located in the Special Purpose Data Memory, as shown in the accompanying table. The number of registers falls into three categories. The first is the INTC0~INTC1 registers which setup the primary interrupts, the second is the MFI0~MFI2 registers which setup the Multi-function interrupts. Finally there is an INTEG register to setup the external interrupt trigger edge type.

Each register contains a number of enable bits to enable or disable individual registers as well as interrupt flags to indicate the presence of an interrupt request. The naming convention of these follows a specific pattern. First is listed an abbreviated interrupt type, then the (optional) number of that interrupt followed by either an "E" for enable/disable bit or "F" for request flag.

| Function                        | Enable Bit | Request Flag | Notes    |
|---------------------------------|------------|--------------|----------|
| Global                          | EMI        | _            | _        |
| INTn Pin                        | INTnE      | INTnF        | n=0 or 1 |
| Time Base                       | TBnE       | TBnF         | n=0 or 1 |
| Multi-function                  | MFInE      | MFInF        | n=0~2    |
| LVD                             | LVDE       | LVDF         | _        |
| RF TX FIFO Length Margin Detect | FFMGE      | FFMGF        | _        |
| RF Burst Mode Transmit Complete | BMTCE      | BMTCF        | _        |
| СТМ                             | CTMPE      | CTMPF        |          |
| CTW                             | CTMAE      | STMAF        | _        |
| PTM                             | PTMPE      | PTMPF        |          |
| PTIVI                           | PTMAE      | PTMAF        | _        |

**Interrupt Register Bit Naming Conventions** 

Rev. 1.10 109 May 19, 2017

| Register |       |       |       |       |        |        |        |        |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Name     | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3      | 2      | 1      | 0      |
| INTEG    | _     | _     | _     | _     | INT1S1 | INT1S0 | INT0S1 | INT0S0 |
| INTC0    | _     | TB0F  | INT1F | INT0F | TB0E   | INT1E  | INT0E  | EMI    |
| INTC1    | MFI2F | MFI1F | MFI0F | TB1F  | MFI2E  | MFI1E  | MFI0E  | TB1E   |
| MFI0     | _     | _     | CTMAF | CTMPF | _      | _      | CTMAE  | CTMPE  |
| MFI1     | _     | _     | PTMAF | PTMPF | _      | _      | PTMAE  | PTMPE  |
| MFI2     | _     | LVDF  | FFMGF | BMTCF | _      | LVDE   | FFMGE  | BMTCE  |

#### **Interrupt Registers List**

### **INTEG Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3      | 2      | 1      | 0      |
|------|---|---|---|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | INT1S1 | INT1S0 | INT0S1 | INT0S0 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W    | R/W    | R/W    | R/W    |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      |

Bit 7~4 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 3~2 **INT1S1~INT1S0**: Interrupt edge control for INT1 pin

00: Disable

01: Rising edge

10: Falling edge

11: Rising and falling edges

Bit 1~0 INT0S1~INT0S0: Interrupt edge control for INT0 pin

00: Disable

01: Rising edge

10: Falling edge

11: Rising and falling edges

### **INTC0** Register

| Bit  | 7 | 6    | 5     | 4     | 3    | 2     | 1     | 0   |
|------|---|------|-------|-------|------|-------|-------|-----|
| Name | _ | TB0F | INT1F | INT0F | TB0E | INT1E | INT0E | EMI |
| R/W  | _ | R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W |
| POR  | _ | 0    | 0     | 0     | 0    | 0     | 0     | 0   |

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 6 **TB0F**: Time Base 0 interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 5 **INT1F**: INT1 interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **INT0F**: INT0 interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 **TB0E**: Time Base 0 interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 2 **INT1E**: INT1 interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable



Bit 1 **INT0E**: INT0 interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 0 EMI: Global interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable

### **INTC1** Register

| Bit  | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4    | 3     | 2     | 1     | 0    |
|------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|-------|-------|------|
| Name | MFI2F | MFI1F | MFI0F | TB1F | MFI2E | MFI1E | MFI0E | TB1E |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   | R/W  |
| POR  | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0    | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0    |

Bit 7 MFI2F: Multi-function interrupt 2 request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 6 MFI1F: Multi-function interrupt 1 request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 5 MFI0F: Multi-function interrupt 0 request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 TB1F: Time Base 0 interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 MFI2E: Multi-function interrupt 2 control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 2 MFI1E: Multi-function interrupt 1 control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 1 MFI0E: Multi-function interrupt 0 control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 0 **TB1E**: Time Base 0 interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable



#### MFI0 Register

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5     | 4     | 3 | 2 | 1     | 0     |
|------|---|---|-------|-------|---|---|-------|-------|
| Name | _ | _ | CTMAF | CTMPF | _ | _ | CTMAE | CTMPE |
| R/W  | _ | _ | R/W   | R/W   | _ | _ | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | _ | _ | 0     | 0     | _ | _ | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 CTMAF: CTM Comparator A match interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 CTMPF: CTM Comparator P match interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 CTMAE: CTM Comparator A match interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 0 CTMPE: CTM Comparator P match interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable

### **MFI1 Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5     | 4     | 3 | 2 | 1     | 0     |
|------|---|---|-------|-------|---|---|-------|-------|
| Name | _ | _ | PTMAF | PTMPF | _ | _ | PTMAE | PTMPE |
| R/W  | _ | _ | R/W   | R/W   | _ | _ | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | _ | _ | 0     | 0     | _ | _ | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 **PTMAF**: PTM Comparator A match interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 **PTMPF**: PTM Comparator P match interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 3~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1 **PTMAE**: PTM Comparator A match interrupt control

0: Disable1: Enable

Bit 0 **PTMPE**: PTM Comparator P match interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Rev. 1.10 112 May 19, 2017



#### **MFI2 Register**

Bit 6

| Bit  | 7 | 6    | 5     | 4     | 3 | 2    | 1     | 0     |
|------|---|------|-------|-------|---|------|-------|-------|
| Name | _ | LVDF | FFMGF | BMTCF | _ | LVDE | FFMGE | BMTCE |
| R/W  | _ | R/W  | R/W   | R/W   | _ | R/W  | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | _ | 0    | 0     | 0     | _ | 0    | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7 Unimplemented, read as "0"

LVDF: LVD interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 5 FFMGF: RF TX FIFO Length Margin detect interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 4 BMTCF: RF Burst Mode Transmit Complete interrupt request flag

0: No request1: Interrupt request

Bit 3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2 LVDE: LVD interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 1 FFMGE: RF TX FIFO Length Margin detect interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 0 BMTCE: RF Burst Mode Transmit Complete interrupt control

0: Disable 1: Enable

#### **Interrupt Operation**

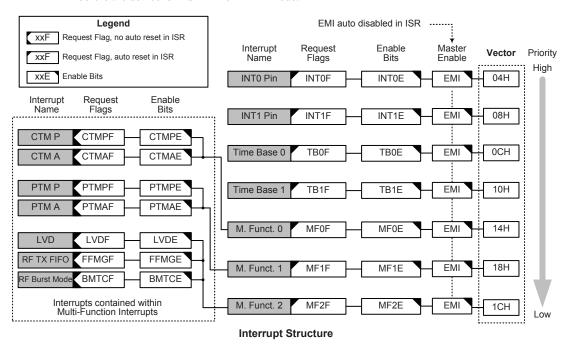
When the conditions for an interrupt event occur, such as a TM Comparator P or Comparator A match etc., the relevant interrupt request flag will be set. Whether the request flag actually generates a program jump to the relevant interrupt vector is determined by the condition of the interrupt enable bit. If the enable bit is set high then the program will jump to its relevant vector; if the enable bit is zero then although the interrupt request flag is set an actual interrupt will not be generated and the program will not jump to the relevant interrupt vector. The global interrupt enable bit, if cleared to zero, will disable all interrupts.

When an interrupt is generated, the Program Counter, which stores the address of the next instruction to be executed, will be transferred onto the stack. The Program Counter will then be loaded with a new address which will be the value of the corresponding interrupt vector. The microcontroller will then fetch its next instruction from this interrupt vector. The instruction at this vector will usually be a "JMP" which will jump to another section of program which is known as the interrupt service routine. Here is located the code to control the appropriate interrupt. The interrupt service routine must be terminated with a "RETI", which retrieves the original Program Counter address from the stack and allows the microcontroller to continue with normal execution at the point where the interrupt occurred.

The various interrupt enable bits, together with their associated request flags, are shown in the accompanying diagrams with their order of priority. Some interrupt sources have their own individual vector while others share the same multi-function interrupt vector. Once an interrupt subroutine is serviced, all the other interrupts will be blocked, as the global interrupt enable bit, EMI bit will be cleared automatically. This will prevent any further interrupt nesting from occurring. However, if other interrupt requests occur during this interval, although the interrupt will not be immediately serviced, the request flag will still be recorded.



If an interrupt requires immediate servicing while the program is already in another interrupt service routine, the EMI bit should be set after entering the routine, to allow interrupt nesting. If the stack is full, the interrupt request will not be acknowledged, even if the related interrupt is enabled, until the Stack Pointer is decremented. If immediate service is desired, the stack must be prevented from becoming full. In case of simultaneous requests, the accompanying diagram shows the priority that is applied. All of the interrupt request flags when set will wake-up the device if it is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode, however to prevent a wake-up from occurring the corresponding flag should be set before the device is in SLEEP or IDLE Mode.



#### **External Interrupts**

The external interrupts are controlled by signal transitions on the pins INT0~INT1. An external interrupt request will take place when the external interrupt request flags, INT0F~INT1F, are set, which will occur when a transition, whose type is chosen by the edge select bits, appears on the external interrupt pins. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and respective external interrupt enable bit, INT0E~INT1E, must first be set. Additionally the correct interrupt edge type must be selected using the INTEG register to enable the external interrupt function and to choose the trigger edge type. As the external interrupt pins are pin-shared with I/O pins, they can only be configured as external interrupt pins if their external interrupt enable bit in the corresponding interrupt register has been set and the external interrupt pin is selected by the corresponding pin-shared function selection bits. The pin must also be setup as an input by setting the corresponding bit in the port control register. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the correct transition type appears on the external interrupt pin, a subroutine call to the external interrupt vector, will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the external interrupt request flags, INT0F~INT1F, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts. Note that any pull-high resistor selections on the external interrupt pins will remain valid even if the pin is used as an external interrupt input.

The INTEG register is used to select the type of active edge that will trigger the external interrupt. A choice of either rising or falling or both edge types can be chosen to trigger an external interrupt. Note that the INTEG register can also be used to disable the external interrupt function.

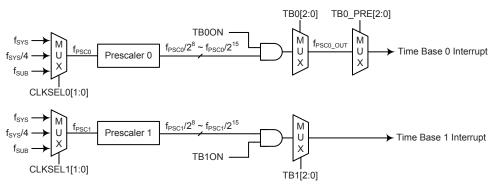
Rev. 1.10 114 May 19, 2017



### **Time Base Interrupts**

The function of the Time Base Interrupts is to provide regular time signal in the form of an internal interrupt. They are controlled by the overflow signals from their respective timer functions. When these happens their respective interrupt request flags, TB0F or TB1F will be set. To allow the program to branch to their respective interrupt vector addresses, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI and Time Base enable bits, TB0E or TB1E, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the Time Base overflows, a subroutine call to their respective vector locations will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the respective interrupt request flag, TB0F or TB1F, will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be cleared to disable other interrupts.

The Time Base clock source,  $f_{PSC0}$  or  $f_{PSC0}$ , originates from the internal clock source  $f_{SYS}$ ,  $f_{SYS}/4$  or  $f_{SUB}$  and then passes through a divider, the division ratio of which is selected by programming the appropriate bits in the TB0C and TB1C registers to obtain longer interrupt periods whose value ranges. The clock source which in turn controls the Time Base interrupt period is selected using the CLKSEL0[1:0] and CLKSEL1[1:0] bits in the PSCR0 and PSCR1 register respectively.



**Time Base Interrupts** 

#### **PSCR0** Register

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1        | 0        |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|----------|----------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | CLKSEL01 | CLKSEL00 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W      | R/W      |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0        | 0        |

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 CLKSEL01~CLKSEL00: Prescaler 0 clock source f<sub>PSC0</sub> selection

00: f<sub>SYS</sub> 01: f<sub>SYS</sub>/4 1x: f<sub>SUB</sub>

Care must be taken that when the MCU enters the DEEP SLEEP Mode, the Time Base 0 clock source comes from  $f_{LIRC}$ , irrespective of the prescaler 0 clock source selection.

#### **PSCR1 Register**

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1        | 0        |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|----------|----------|
| Name | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | CLKSEL11 | CLKSEL10 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W      | R/W      |
| POR  | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0        | 0        |

Bit 7~2 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 1~0 CLKSEL11~CLKSEL10: Prescaler 1 clock source f<sub>PSC1</sub> selection

00: f<sub>SYS</sub> 01: f<sub>SYS</sub>/4 1x: f<sub>SUB</sub>

### **TB0C Register**

| Bit  | 7     | 6        | 5        | 4        | 3 | 2    | 1    | 0    |
|------|-------|----------|----------|----------|---|------|------|------|
| Name | TB00N | TB0_PRE2 | TB0_PRE1 | TB0_PRE0 | _ | TB02 | TB01 | TB00 |
| R/W  | R/W   | R/W      | R/W      | R/W      | _ | R/W  | R/W  | R/W  |
| POR  | 0     | 0        | 0        | 0        | _ | 0    | 0    | 0    |

Bit 7 **TB0ON**: Time Base 0 Control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 6~4 TB0\_PRE2~TB0\_PRE0: Select Time Base 0 Time-out Period from f<sub>PSC0\_OUT</sub>

000: 2<sup>0</sup>/f<sub>PSC0\_OUT</sub> 001: 2<sup>1</sup>/f<sub>PSC0\_OUT</sub> 010: 2<sup>2</sup>/f<sub>PSC0\_OUT</sub> 011: 2<sup>3</sup>/f<sub>PSC0\_OUT</sub> 100: 2<sup>4</sup>/f<sub>PSC0\_OUT</sub> 100: 2<sup>5</sup>/f<sub>PSC0\_OUT</sub> 110: 2<sup>6</sup>/f<sub>PSC0\_OUT</sub> 111: 2<sup>7</sup>/f<sub>PSC0\_OUT</sub>

Bit 3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2~0 **TB02~TB00**: Select Time Base 0 Time-out Period from f<sub>PSC0</sub>

 $\begin{array}{l} 000:\ 2^8/f_{PSC0} \\ 001:\ 2^9/f_{PSC0} \\ 010:\ 2^{10}/f_{PSC0} \\ 011:\ 2^{11}/f_{PSC0} \\ 100:\ 2^{12}/f_{PSC0} \\ 101:\ 2^{13}/f_{PSC0} \\ 110:\ 2^{14}/f_{PSC0} \\ 111:\ 2^{15}/f_{PSC0} \end{array}$ 

Rev. 1.10 May 19, 2017



#### **TB1C Register**

| Bit  | 7     | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2    | 1    | 0    |
|------|-------|---|---|---|---|------|------|------|
| Name | TB10N | _ | _ | _ | _ | TB12 | TB11 | TB10 |
| R/W  | R/W   | _ | _ | _ | _ | R/W  | R/W  | R/W  |
| POR  | 0     | _ | _ | _ | _ | 0    | 0    | 0    |

Bit 7 **TB10N**: Time Base 1 Control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 6~3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2~0 TB12~TB10: Select Time Base 1 Time-out Period from f<sub>PSC1</sub>

 $\begin{array}{l} 000:\ 2^8/f_{PSC1} \\ 001:\ 2^9/f_{PSC1} \\ 010:\ 2^{10}/f_{PSC1} \\ 011:\ 2^{11}/f_{PSC1} \\ 100:\ 2^{12}/f_{PSC1} \\ 101:\ 2^{13}/f_{PSC1} \\ 101:\ 2^{13}/f_{PSC1} \\ 110:\ 2^{14}/f_{PSC1} \\ 111:\ 2^{15}/f_{PSC1} \end{array}$ 

#### **Multi-function Interrupts**

Within the devices there are up to three Multi-function interrupts. Unlike the other independent interrupts, these interrupts have no independent source, but rather are formed from other existing interrupt sources, namely the TM Interrupts, LVD Interrupt, RF FFMG length margin Interrupt and RF Burst Mode Transmit Complete Interrupt.

A Multi-function interrupt request will take place when any of the Multi-function interrupt request flags, MFInF are set. The Multi-function interrupt flags will be set when any of their included functions generate an interrupt request flag. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, when the Multi-function interrupt is enabled and the stack is not full, and either one of the interrupts contained within each of Multi-function interrupt occurs, a subroutine call to one of the Multi-function interrupt vectors will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the related Multi-function request flag will be automatically reset and the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts.

However, it must be noted that, although the Multi-function Interrupt flags will be automatically reset when the interrupt is serviced, the request flags from the original source of the Multi-function interrupts will not be automatically reset and must be manually reset by the application program.

### **RF TX FIFO Length Margin Detect Interrupt**

The RF TX FIFO Length Margin Detect interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. A TX FIFO Length Margin Detect Interrupt request will take place when its interrupt request flag, FFMGF, is set, which occurs when the TX FIFO length is less than the threshold length. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and TX FIFO Length Margin Detect Interrupt enable bit, FFMGE, and associated Multi-function interrupt enable bit, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the previously mentioned condition occurs, a subroutine call to the respective interrupt vector will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. As the FFMGF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.



#### **RF Burst Mode Transmit Complete Interrupt**

The RF Burst Mode Transmit Complete interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. A RF Burst Mode Transmit Complete Interrupt request will take place when its interrupt request flag, BMTCF, is set, which occurs when the TX packet has been sent completely in the Burst Mode. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, and RF Burst Mode Transmit Complete Interrupt enable bit, BMTCE, and associated Multifunction interrupt enable bit, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and the previously mentioned condition occurs, a subroutine call to the respective interrupt vector will take place. When the interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. As the BMTCF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

#### **LVD** Interrupt

The Low Voltage Detector Interrupt is contained within the Multi-function Interrupt. An LVD Interrupt request will take place when the LVD Interrupt request flag, LVDF, is set, which occurs when the Low Voltage Detector function detects a low power supply voltage. To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, Low Voltage Interrupt enable bit, LVDE, and associated Multi-function interrupt enable bit, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a low voltage condition occurs, a subroutine call to the Multi-function Interrupt vector, will take place. When the Low Voltage Interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the Multi-function interrupt request flag will be also automatically cleared. As the LVDF flag will not be automatically cleared, it has to be cleared by the application program.

#### **TM Interrupts**

The Compact and Periodic Type TMs each have two interrupts, one comes from the comparator A match situation and the other comes from the comparator P match situation. All of the TM interrupts are contained within the Multi-function Interrupts. For all of the TM types there are two interrupt request flags and two enable control bits. A TM interrupt request will take place when any of the TM request flags are set, a situation which occurs when a TM comparator P or A match situation happens.

To allow the program to branch to its respective interrupt vector address, the global interrupt enable bit, EMI, respective TM Interrupt enable bit, and relevant Multi-function Interrupt enable bit, MFInE, must first be set. When the interrupt is enabled, the stack is not full and a TM comparator match situation occurs, a subroutine call to the relevant Multi-function Interrupt vector locations, will take place. When the TM interrupt is serviced, the EMI bit will be automatically cleared to disable other interrupts, however only the related MFInF flag will be automatically cleared. As the TM interrupt request flags will not be automatically cleared, they have to be cleared by the application program.

Rev. 1.10 118 May 19, 2017



#### **Interrupt Wake-up Function**

Each of the interrupt functions has the capability of waking up the microcontroller when in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. A wake-up is generated when an interrupt request flag changes from low to high and is independent of whether the interrupt is enabled or not. Therefore, even though the device is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode and its system oscillator stopped, situations such as external edge transitions on the external interrupt pins or a low power supply voltage may cause their respective interrupt flag to be set high and consequently generate an interrupt.

The Time Base 0 interrupt has the capacility of waking up the microcontroller when in the DEEP SLEEP Mode, where the Time Base 0 clock source comes from  $f_{LIRC}$ .

Care must therefore be taken if spurious wake-up situations are to be avoided. If an interrupt wake-up function is to be disabled then the corresponding interrupt request flag should be set high before the device enters the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or IDLE Mode. The interrupt enable bits have no effect on the interrupt wake-up function.

#### **Programming Considerations**

By disabling the relevant interrupt enable bits, a requested interrupt can be prevented from being serviced, however, once an interrupt request flag is set, it will remain in this condition in the interrupt register until the corresponding interrupt is serviced or until the request flag is cleared by the application program.

Where a certain interrupt is contained within a Multi-function interrupt, then when the interrupt service routine is executed, as only the Multi-function interrupt request flags, MFInF, will be automatically cleared, the individual request flag for the function needs to be cleared by the application program.

It is recommended that programs do not use the "CALL" instruction within the interrupt service subroutine. Interrupts often occur in an unpredictable manner or need to be serviced immediately. If only one stack is left and the interrupt is not well controlled, the original control sequence will be damaged once a CALL subroutine is executed in the interrupt subroutine.

Every interrupt has the capability of waking up the microcontroller when it is in the SLEEP or IDLE Mode and the Time Base 0 interrupt can wake-up the microcontroller when it is in the DEEP SLEEP Mode, the wake up being generated when the interrupt request flag changes from low to high. If it is required to prevent a certain interrupt from waking up the microcontroller then its respective request flag should be first set high before enter the SLEEP, IDLE or DEEP SLEEP Mode.

As only the Program Counter is pushed onto the stack, then when the interrupt is serviced, if the contents of the accumulator, status register or other registers are altered by the interrupt service program, their contents should be saved to the memory at the beginning of the interrupt service routine.

To return from an interrupt subroutine, either a RET or RETI instruction may be executed. The RETI instruction in addition to executing a return to the main program also automatically sets the EMI bit high to allow further interrupts. The RET instruction however only executes a return to the main program leaving the EMI bit in its present zero state and therefore disabling the execution of further interrupts.



## **Low Voltage Detector – LVD**

The device has a Low Voltage Detector function, also known as LVD. This enabled the device to monitor the power supply voltage,  $V_{DD}$ , and provide a warning signal should it fall below a certain level. This function may be especially useful in battery applications where the supply voltage will gradually reduce as the battery ages, as it allows an early warning battery low signal to be generated. The Low Voltage Detector also has the capability of generating an interrupt signal.

#### **LVD Register**

The Low Voltage Detector function is controlled using a single register with the name LVDC. Three bits in this register, VLVD2~VLVD0, are used to select one of eight fixed voltages below which a low voltage condition will be determined. A low voltage condition is indicated when the LVDO bit is set. If the LVDO bit is low, this indicates that the V<sub>DD</sub> voltage is above the preset low voltage value. The ENLVD bit is used to control the overall on/off function of the low voltage detector. Setting the bit high will enable the low voltage detector. Clearing the bit to zero will switch off the internal low voltage detector circuits. As the low voltage detector will consume a certain amount of power, it may be desirable to switch off the circuit when not in use, an important consideration in power sensitive battery powered applications.

#### **LVDC** Register

| Bit  | 7 | 6 | 5    | 4     | 3 | 2     | 1     | 0     |
|------|---|---|------|-------|---|-------|-------|-------|
| Name | _ | _ | LVDO | ENLVD | _ | VLVD2 | VLVD1 | VLVD0 |
| R/W  | _ | _ | R    | R/W   | _ | R/W   | R/W   | R/W   |
| POR  | _ | _ | 0    | 0     | _ | 0     | 0     | 0     |

Bit 7~6 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 5 LVDO: LVD Output flag

0: No Low Voltage Detected

1: Low Voltage Detected

Bit 4 ENLVD: Low Voltage Detector Enable control

0: Disable 1: Enable

Bit 3 Unimplemented, read as "0"

Bit 2~0 VLVD2~VLVD0: LVD Voltage selection

000: 1.9V 001: 2.0V

010: 2.2V

011: 2.4V

100: 2.8V

101: 2.9V

110: 3.0V

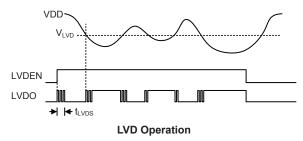
111: 3.6V

Rev. 1.10 120 May 19, 2017



#### **LVD Operation**

The Low Voltage Detector function operates by comparing the power supply voltage,  $V_{DD}$ , with a pre-specified voltage level stored in the LVDC register. This has a range of between 1.9V and 3.6V. When the power supply voltage,  $V_{DD}$ , falls below this pre-determined value, the LVDO bit will be set high indicating a low power supply voltage condition. The Low Voltage Detector function is supplied by a reference voltage which will be automatically enabled. When the device is in the DEEP SLEEP, SLEEP or IDLE mode, the low voltage detector will remain active if the ENLVD bit is high. After enabling the Low Voltage Detector, a time delay  $t_{LVDS}$  should be allowed for the circuitry to stabilise before reading the LVDO bit. Note also that as the  $V_{DD}$  voltage may rise and fall rather slowly, at the voltage nears that of  $V_{LVD}$ , there may be multiple bit LVDO transitions.



The Low Voltage Detector also has its own interrupt which is contained within one of the Multi-function interrupts, providing an alternative means of low voltage detection, in addition to polling the LVDO bit. The interrupt will only be generated after a delay of  $t_{\rm LVD}$  after the LVDO bit has been set high by a low voltage condition. In this case, the LVDF interrupt request flag will be set, causing an interrupt to be generated if  $V_{\rm DD}$  falls below the preset LVD voltage. This will cause the device to wake-up from the SLEEP or IDLE Mode, however if the Low Voltage Detector wake up function is not required then the LVDF flag should be first set high before the device enters the SLEEP or IDLE Mode. Note that an LVD interrupt request will not cause the device to be woken-up from the DEEP SLEEP Mode, where the device must be woken-up using other methods which have been described in the Wake-up section.

# **Configuration Options**

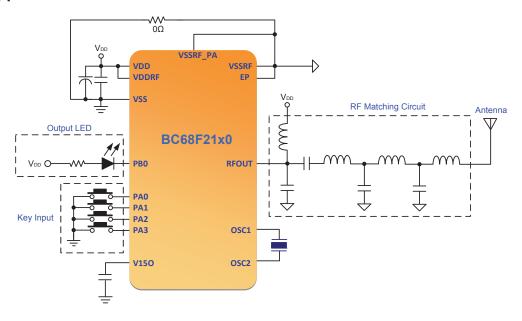
Configuration options refer to certain options within the MCU that are programmed into the device during the programming process. During the development process, these options are selected using the HT-IDE software development tools. As these options are programmed into the device using the hardware programming tools, once they are selected they cannot be changed later using the application program. All options must be defined for proper system function, the details of which are shown in the table.

| No.                   | Options  |  |  |
|-----------------------|--|--|--|
| Watchdog Timer Option |  |  |  |
| 1                     | Watchdog Timer Function: 1. Always enable 2. By WDTC control |  |  |
| LVR Option            |  |  |  |
| 2                     | LVR Function: 1. Disable 2. Enable                           |  |  |

Rev. 1.10 121 May 19, 2017



# **Application Circuits**



Rev. 1.10 122 May 19, 2017



#### Instruction Set

#### Introduction

Central to the successful operation of any microcontroller is its instruction set, which is a set of program instruction codes that directs the microcontroller to perform certain operations. In the case of Holtek microcontroller, a comprehensive and flexible set of over 60 instructions is provided to enable programmers to implement their application with the minimum of programming overheads.

For easier understanding of the various instruction codes, they have been subdivided into several functional groupings.

### **Instruction Timing**

Most instructions are implemented within one instruction cycle. The exceptions to this are branch, call, or table read instructions where two instruction cycles are required. One instruction cycle is equal to 4 system clock cycles, therefore in the case of an 8MHz system oscillator, most instructions would be implemented within 0.5µs and branch or call instructions would be implemented within 1µs. Although instructions which require one more cycle to implement are generally limited to the JMP, CALL, RET, RETI and table read instructions, it is important to realize that any other instructions which involve manipulation of the Program Counter Low register or PCL will also take one more cycle to implement. As instructions which change the contents of the PCL will imply a direct jump to that new address, one more cycle will be required. Examples of such instructions would be "CLR PCL" or "MOV PCL, A". For the case of skip instructions, it must be noted that if the result of the comparison involves a skip operation then this will also take one more cycle, if no skip is involved then only one cycle is required.

### **Moving and Transferring Data**

The transfer of data within the microcontroller program is one of the most frequently used operations. Making use of several kinds of MOV instructions, data can be transferred from registers to the Accumulator and vice-versa as well as being able to move specific immediate data directly into the Accumulator. One of the most important data transfer applications is to receive data from the input ports and transfer data to the output ports.

#### **Arithmetic Operations**

The ability to perform certain arithmetic operations and data manipulation is a necessary feature of most microcontroller applications. Within the Holtek microcontroller instruction set are a range of add and subtract instruction mnemonics to enable the necessary arithmetic to be carried out. Care must be taken to ensure correct handling of carry and borrow data when results exceed 255 for addition and less than 0 for subtraction. The increment and decrement instructions such as INC, INCA, DEC and DECA provide a simple means of increasing or decreasing by a value of one of the values in the destination specified.



### **Logical and Rotate Operation**

The standard logical operations such as AND, OR, XOR and CPL all have their own instruction within the Holtek microcontroller instruction set. As with the case of most instructions involving data manipulation, data must pass through the Accumulator which may involve additional programming steps. In all logical data operations, the zero flag may be set if the result of the operation is zero. Another form of logical data manipulation comes from the rotate instructions such as RR, RL, RRC and RLC which provide a simple means of rotating one bit right or left. Different rotate instructions exist depending on program requirements. Rotate instructions are useful for serial port programming applications where data can be rotated from an internal register into the Carry bit from where it can be examined and the necessary serial bit set high or low. Another application which rotate data operations are used is to implement multiplication and division calculations.

#### **Branches and Control Transfer**

Program branching takes the form of either jumps to specified locations using the JMP instruction or to a subroutine using the CALL instruction. They differ in the sense that in the case of a subroutine call, the program must return to the instruction immediately when the subroutine has been carried out. This is done by placing a return instruction "RET" in the subroutine which will cause the program to jump back to the address right after the CALL instruction. In the case of a JMP instruction, the program simply jumps to the desired location. There is no requirement to jump back to the original jumping off point as in the case of the CALL instruction. One special and extremely useful set of branch instructions are the conditional branches. Here a decision is first made regarding the condition of a certain data memory or individual bits. Depending upon the conditions, the program will continue with the next instruction or skip over it and jump to the following instruction. These instructions are the key to decision making and branching within the program perhaps determined by the condition of certain input switches or by the condition of internal data bits.

#### **Bit Operations**

The ability to provide single bit operations on Data Memory is an extremely flexible feature of all Holtek microcontrollers. This feature is especially useful for output port bit programming where individual bits or port pins can be directly set high or low using either the "SET [m].i" or "CLR [m].i" instructions respectively. The feature removes the need for programmers to first read the 8-bit output port, manipulate the input data to ensure that other bits are not changed and then output the port with the correct new data. This read-modify-write process is taken care of automatically when these bit operation instructions are used.

#### **Table Read Operations**

Data storage is normally implemented by using registers. However, when working with large amounts of fixed data, the volume involved often makes it inconvenient to store the fixed data in the Data Memory. To overcome this problem, Holtek microcontrollers allow an area of Program Memory to be setup as a table where data can be directly stored. A set of easy to use instructions provides the means by which this fixed data can be referenced and retrieved from the Program Memory.

#### Other Operations

In addition to the above functional instructions, a range of other instructions also exist such as the "HALT" instruction for Power-down operations and instructions to control the operation of the Watchdog Timer for reliable program operations under extreme electric or electromagnetic environments. For their relevant operations, refer to the functional related sections.

Rev. 1.10 124 May 19, 2017



# **Instruction Set Summary**

The instructions related to the data memory access in the following table can be used when the desired data memory is located in Data Memory sector 0.

#### **Table Conventions**

x: Bits immediate data

m: Data Memory address

A: Accumulator

i: 0~7 number of bits

addr: Program memory address

| Mnemonic        | Description   | Cycles            | Flag Affected        |
|-----------------|---|-------------------|----------------------|
| Arithmetic      |   | _                 | -                    |
| ADD A,[m]       | Add Data Memory to ACC  | 1                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC     |
| ADDM A,[m]      | Add ACC to Data Memory  | 1 Note            | Z, C, AC, OV, SC     |
| ADD A,x         | Add immediate data to ACC                                       | 1                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC     |
| ADC A,[m]       | Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry                               | 1                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC     |
| ADCM A,[m]      | Add ACC to Data memory with Carry                               | 1 Note            | Z, C, AC, OV, SC     |
| SUB A,x         | Subtract immediate data from the ACC                            | 1                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ |
| SUB A,[m]       | Subtract Data Memory from ACC                                   | 1                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ |
| SUBM A,[m]      | Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory        | 1 Note            | Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ |
| SBC A,x         | Subtract immediate data from ACC with Carry                     | 1                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ |
| SBC A,[m]       | Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry                        | 1                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ |
| SBCM A,[m]      | Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry, result in Data Memory | 1 Note            | Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ |
| DAA [m]         | Decimal adjust ACC for Addition with result in Data Memory      | 1 Note            | С                    |
| Logic Operation | on .  |                   |                      |
| AND A,[m]       | Logical AND Data Memory to ACC                                  | 1                 | Z                    |
| OR A,[m]        | Logical OR Data Memory to ACC                                   | 1                 | Z                    |
| XOR A,[m]       | Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC                                  | 1                 | Z                    |
| ANDM A,[m]      | Logical AND ACC to Data Memory                                  | 1 Note            | Z                    |
| ORM A,[m]       | Logical OR ACC to Data Memory                                   | 1 Note            | Z                    |
| XORM A,[m]      | Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory                                  | 1 Note            | Z                    |
| AND A,x         | Logical AND immediate Data to ACC                               | 1                 | Z                    |
| OR A,x          | Logical OR immediate Data to ACC                                | 1                 | Z                    |
| XOR A,x         | Logical XOR immediate Data to ACC                               | 1                 | Z                    |
| CPL [m]         | Complement Data Memory  | 1 Note            | Z                    |
| CPLA [m]        | Complement Data Memory with result in ACC                       | 1                 | Z                    |
| Increment & Do  | ecrement  |                   |                      |
| INCA [m]        | Increment Data Memory with result in ACC                        | 1                 | Z                    |
| INC [m]         | Increment Data Memory   | 1 Note            | Z                    |
| DECA [m]        | Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC                        | 1                 | Z                    |
| DEC [m]         | Decrement Data Memory   | 1 Note            | Z                    |
| Rotate          |   |                   |                      |
| RRA [m]         | Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC                     | 1                 | None                 |
| RR [m]          | Rotate Data Memory right  | 1 Note            | None                 |
| RRCA [m]        | Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC       | 1                 | С                    |
| RRC [m]         | Rotate Data Memory right through Carry                          | 1 Note            | С                    |
| RLA [m]         | Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC                      | 1                 | None                 |
| RL [m]          | Rotate Data Memory left   | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None                 |
| RLCA [m]        | Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC        | 1                 | С                    |
| RLC [m]         | Rotate Data Memory left through Carry                           | 1 Note            | С                    |



| Mnemonic      | Description   | Cycles            | Flag Affected |
|---------------|---|-------------------|---------------|
| Data Move     |   |                   |               |
| MOV A,[m]     | Move Data Memory to ACC   | 1                 | None          |
| MOV [m],A     | Move ACC to Data Memory   | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| MOV A,x       | Move immediate data to ACC  | 1                 | None          |
| Bit Operation | 1   |                   |               |
| CLR [m].i     | Clear bit of Data Memory  | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SET [m].i     | Set bit of Data Memory  | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| Branch Oper   | ation   |                   | ,             |
| JMP addr      | Jump unconditionally  | 2                 | None          |
| SZ [m]        | Skip if Data Memory is zero   | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SZA [m]       | Skip if Data Memory is zero with data movement to ACC                                 | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SZ [m].i      | Skip if bit i of Data Memory is zero  | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SNZ [m]       | Skip if Data Memory is not zero   | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SNZ [m].i     | Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not zero  | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SIZ [m]       | Skip if increment Data Memory is zero   | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SDZ [m]       | Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero   | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SIZA [m]      | Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC                              | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SDZA [m]      | Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC                              | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| CALL addr     | Subroutine call   | 2                 | None          |
| RET           | Return from subroutine  | 2                 | None          |
| RET A,x       | Return from subroutine and load immediate data to ACC                                 | 2                 | None          |
| RETI          | Return from interrupt   | 2                 | None          |
| Table Read C  | peration  |                   |               |
| TABRD [m]     | Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory                                    | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| TABRDL [m]    | Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory  | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| ITABRD [m]    | Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table to TBLH and Data Memory             | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| ITABRDL [m]   | Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| Miscellaneou  | is  |                   |               |
| NOP           | No operation  | 1                 | None          |
| CLR [m]       | Clear Data Memory   | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SET [m]       | Set Data Memory   | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| CLR WDT       | Clear Watchdog Timer  | 1                 | TO, PDF       |
| SWAP [m]      | Swap nibbles of Data Memory   | 1 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |
| SWAPA [m]     | Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC  | 1                 | None          |
| HALT          | Enter power down mode   | 1                 | TO, PDF       |

Note: 1. For skip instructions, if the result of the comparison involves a skip then up to three cycles are required, if no skip takes place only one cycle is required.

- 2. Any instruction which changes the contents of the PCL will also require 2 cycles for execution.
- 3. For the "CLR WDT" instruction the TO and PDF flags may be affected by the execution status. The TO and PDF flags are cleared after the "CLR WDT" instructions is executed. Otherwise the TO and PDF flags remain unchanged.

Rev. 1.10 126 May 19, 2017



#### **Extended Instruction Set**

The extended instructions are used to support the full range address access for the data memory. When the accessed data memory is located in any data memory sections except sector 0, the extended instruction can be used to access the data memory instead of using the indirect addressing access to improve the CPU firmware performance.

| Mnemonic       | Description   | Cycles            | Flag Affected        |  |  |
|----------------|---|-------------------|----------------------|--|--|
| Arithmetic     |   |                   |                      |  |  |
| LADD A,[m]     | Add Data Memory to ACC  | 2                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC     |  |  |
| LADDM A,[m]    | Add ACC to Data Memory  | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | Z, C, AC, OV, SC     |  |  |
| LADC A,[m]     | Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry                               | 2                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC     |  |  |
| LADCM A,[m]    | Add ACC to Data memory with Carry                               | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | Z, C, AC, OV, SC     |  |  |
| LSUB A,[m]     | Subtract Data Memory from ACC                                   | 2                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ |  |  |
| LSUBM A,[m]    | Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory        | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ |  |  |
| LSBC A,[m]     | Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry                        | 2                 | Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ |  |  |
| LSBCM A,[m]    | Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry, result in Data Memory | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | Z, C, AC, OV, SC, CZ |  |  |
| LDAA [m]       | Decimal adjust ACC for Addition with result in Data Memory      | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | С                    |  |  |
| Logic Operatio | on .  |                   |                      |  |  |
| LAND A,[m]     | Logical AND Data Memory to ACC                                  | 2                 | Z                    |  |  |
| LOR A,[m]      | Logical OR Data Memory to ACC                                   | 2                 | Z                    |  |  |
| LXOR A,[m]     | Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC                                  | 2                 | Z                    |  |  |
| LANDM A,[m]    | Logical AND ACC to Data Memory                                  | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | Z                    |  |  |
| LORM A,[m]     | Logical OR ACC to Data Memory                                   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | Z                    |  |  |
| LXORM A,[m]    | Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory                                  | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | Z                    |  |  |
| LCPL [m]       | Complement Data Memory  | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | Z                    |  |  |
| LCPLA [m]      | Complement Data Memory with result in ACC                       | 2                 | Z                    |  |  |
| Increment & De | ecrement  |                   |                      |  |  |
| LINCA [m]      | Increment Data Memory with result in ACC                        | 2                 | Z                    |  |  |
| LINC [m]       | Increment Data Memory   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | Z                    |  |  |
| LDECA [m]      | Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC                        | 2                 | Z                    |  |  |
| LDEC [m]       | Decrement Data Memory   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | Z                    |  |  |
| Rotate         |   |                   |                      |  |  |
| LRRA [m]       | Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC                     | 2                 | None                 |  |  |
| LRR [m]        | Rotate Data Memory right  | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None                 |  |  |
| LRRCA [m]      | Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC       | 2                 | С                    |  |  |
| LRRC [m]       | Rotate Data Memory right through Carry                          | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | С                    |  |  |
| LRLA [m]       | Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC                      | 2                 | None                 |  |  |
| LRL [m]        | Rotate Data Memory left   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None                 |  |  |
| LRLCA [m]      | Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC        | 2                 | С                    |  |  |
| LRLC [m]       | Rotate Data Memory left through Carry                           | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | С                    |  |  |
| Data Move      |   |                   |                      |  |  |
| LMOV A,[m]     | Move Data Memory to ACC   | 2                 | None                 |  |  |
| LMOV [m],A     | Move ACC to Data Memory   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None                 |  |  |
| Bit Operation  |   |                   |                      |  |  |
| LCLR [m].i     | Clear bit of Data Memory  | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None                 |  |  |
| LSET [m].i     | Set bit of Data Memory  | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None                 |  |  |



| Mnemonic      | Description   | Cycles            | Flag Affected |  |  |  |
|---------------|---|-------------------|---------------|--|--|--|
| Branch        | Branch  |                   |               |  |  |  |
| LSZ [m]       | Skip if Data Memory is zero   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSZA [m]      | Skip if Data Memory is zero with data movement to ACC                                 | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSNZ [m]      | Skip if Data Memory is not zero   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSZ [m].i     | Skip if bit i of Data Memory is zero  | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSNZ [m].i    | Skip if bit i of Data Memory is not zero  | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSIZ [m]      | Skip if increment Data Memory is zero   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSDZ [m]      | Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSIZA [m]     | Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC                              | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSDZA [m]     | Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC                              | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| Table Read    |   |                   |               |  |  |  |
| LTABRD [m]    | Read table to TBLH and Data Memory  | 3 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LTABRDL [m]   | Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory  | 3 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LITABRD [m]   | Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table to TBLH and Data Memory             | 3 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LITABRDL [m]  | Increment table pointer TBLP first and Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory | 3 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| Miscellaneous | Miscellaneous   |                   |               |  |  |  |
| LCLR [m]      | Clear Data Memory   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSET [m]      | Set Data Memory   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSWAP [m]     | Swap nibbles of Data Memory   | 2 <sup>Note</sup> | None          |  |  |  |
| LSWAPA [m]    | Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC  | 2                 | None          |  |  |  |

Note: 1. For these extended skip instructions, if the result of the comparison involves a skip then up to four cycles are required, if no skip takes place two cycles is required.

Rev. 1.10 128 May 19, 2017

<sup>2.</sup> Any extended instruction which changes the contents of the PCL register will also require three cycles for execution.



### **Instruction Definition**

ADC A,[m] Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added.

The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

ADCM A,[m] Add ACC to Data Memory with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added.

The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

ADD A,[m] Add Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added.

The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m]$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

**ADD A,x** Add immediate data to ACC

Description The contents of the Accumulator and the specified immediate data are added.

The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC + x$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

**ADDM A,[m]** Add ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added.

The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m]$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

AND A,[m] Logical AND Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical AND

operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC "AND" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**AND A,x** Logical AND immediate data to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bit wise logical AND

operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC$  "AND" x

Affected flag(s) Z

**ANDM A,[m]** Logical AND ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical AND

operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC "AND" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z



**CALL addr** Subroutine call

Description Unconditionally calls a subroutine at the specified address. The Program Counter then

increments by 1 to obtain the address of the next instruction which is then pushed onto the stack. The specified address is then loaded and the program continues execution from this new address. As this instruction requires an additional operation, it is a two cycle instruction.

Operation Stack  $\leftarrow$  Program Counter + 1

Program Counter ← addr

Affected flag(s) None

**CLR [m]** Clear Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow 00H$ Affected flag(s) None

**CLR [m].i** Clear bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation [m].i  $\leftarrow$  Affected flag(s) None

**CLR WDT** Clear Watchdog Timer

Description The TO, PDF flags and the WDT are all cleared.

Operation WDT cleared

 $TO \leftarrow 0$ <br/>PDF  $\leftarrow 0$ 

Affected flag(s) TO, PDF

**CPL [m]** Complement Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which

previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**CPLA [m]** Complement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which

previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa. The complemented result is stored in

the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**DAA [m]** Decimal-Adjust ACC for addition with result in Data Memory

Description Convert the contents of the Accumulator value to a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value

resulting from the previous addition of two BCD variables. If the low nibble is greater than 9 or if AC flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the low nibble. Otherwise the low nibble remains unchanged. If the high nibble is greater than 9 or if the C flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the high nibble. Essentially, the decimal conversion is performed by adding 00H, 06H, 60H or 66H depending on the Accumulator and flag conditions. Only the C flag may be affected by this instruction which indicates that if the original BCD sum is greater than

100, it allows multiple precision decimal addition.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 00H$  or

 $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 06H \text{ or}$   $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 60H \text{ or}$  $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 66H$ 

Affected flag(s) C



**DEC [m]** Decrement Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**DECA [m]** Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1. The result is stored in the

Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**HALT** Enter power down mode

Description This instruction stops the program execution and turns off the system clock. The contents of

the Data Memory and registers are retained. The WDT and prescaler are cleared. The power

down flag PDF is set and the WDT time-out flag TO is cleared.

Operation  $TO \leftarrow 0$ 

 $PDF \leftarrow 1$ 

Affected flag(s) TO, PDF

**INC [m]** Increment Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**INCA [m]** Increment Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

JMP addr Jump unconditionally

Description The contents of the Program Counter are replaced with the specified address. Program

execution then continues from this new address. As this requires the insertion of a dummy

instruction while the new address is loaded, it is a two cycle instruction.

Operation Program Counter ← addr

Affected flag(s) None

MOV A,[m] Move Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m]$ Affected flag(s) None

**MOV A,x** Move immediate data to ACC

Description The immediate data specified is loaded into the Accumulator.

 $\begin{array}{ll} \text{Operation} & \quad & \text{ACC} \leftarrow x \\ \text{Affected flag(s)} & \quad & \text{None} \end{array}$ 

**MOV** [m],A Move ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the Accumulator are copied to the specified Data Memory.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC$ Affected flag(s) None



**NOP** No operation

Description No operation is performed. Execution continues with the next instruction.

Operation No operation
Affected flag(s) None

OR A,[m] Logical OR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise

logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC "OR" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**OR A,x** Logical OR immediate data to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bitwise logical OR

operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC "OR" x$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

ORM A,[m] Logical OR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical OR

operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC "OR" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**RET** Return from subroutine

Description The Program Counter is restored from the stack. Program execution continues at the restored

address.

Operation Program Counter ← Stack

Affected flag(s) None

**RET A,x** Return from subroutine and load immediate data to ACC

Description The Program Counter is restored from the stack and the Accumulator loaded with the specified

immediate data. Program execution continues at the restored address.

Operation Program Counter ← Stack

 $ACC \leftarrow x$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**RETI** Return from interrupt

Description The Program Counter is restored from the stack and the interrupts are re-enabled by setting the

EMI bit. EMI is the master interrupt global enable bit. If an interrupt was pending when the RETI instruction is executed, the pending Interrupt routine will be processed before returning

to the main program.

Operation Program Counter ← Stack

 $EMI \leftarrow 1$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**RL [m]** Rotate Data Memory left

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.

Operation  $[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ 

 $[m].0 \leftarrow [m].7$ 

Affected flag(s) None



**RLA [m]** Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.

The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain

unchanged.

Operation  $ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ 

 $ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7$ 

Affected flag(s) None

RLC [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7

replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 0.

Operation  $[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ 

 $[m].0 \leftarrow C$ 

 $C \leftarrow [m].7$ 

Affected flag(s) C

**RLCA [m]** Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the

Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into the bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the

Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.(i+1)  $\leftarrow$  [m].i; (i=0 $\sim$ 6)

 $ACC.0 \leftarrow C$ 

 $C \leftarrow [m].7$ 

Affected flag(s) C

RR [m] Rotate Data Memory right

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i  $\leftarrow$  [m].(i+1); (i=0 $\sim$ 6)

 $[m].7 \leftarrow [m].0$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**RRA** [m] Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0

rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the

Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i  $\leftarrow$  [m].(i+1); (i=0 $\sim$ 6)

 $ACC.7 \leftarrow [m].0$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**RRC [m]** Rotate Data Memory right through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0

replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i  $\leftarrow$  [m].(i+1); (i=0 $\sim$ 6)

 $[m].7 \leftarrow C$ 

 $C \leftarrow [m].0$ 

Affected flag(s) C



RRCA [m] Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces

the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the

Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i  $\leftarrow$  [m].(i+1); (i=0 $\sim$ 6)

 $ACC.7 \leftarrow C$  $C \leftarrow [m].0$ 

Affected flag(s) C

**SBC A,[m]** Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are

subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is

positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m] - C$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

**SBC A, x** Subtract immediate data from ACC with Carry

Description The immediate data and the complement of the carry flag are subtracted from the

Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag

will be set to 1.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m] - \overline{C}$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

**SBCM A,[m]** Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry and result in Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are

subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is

positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m] - C$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

**SDZ [m]** Skip if decrement Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0 the

following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program

proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$ 

Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

**SDZA [m]** Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0, the

following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy

instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0,

the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$ 

Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

Rev. 1.10 134 May 19, 2017



**SET [m]** Set Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow FFH$ Affected flag(s) None

**SET [m].i** Set bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation  $[m].i \leftarrow 1$ Affected flag(s) None

**SIZ [m]** Skip if increment Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the

following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program

proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$ 

Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

**SIZA [m]** Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the

following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not

0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$ 

Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

**SNZ [m].i** Skip if Data Memory is not 0

Description If the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the

insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle

instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if  $[m].i \neq 0$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**SNZ [m]** Skip if Data Memory is not 0

Description If the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the

insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle

instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if  $[m] \neq 0$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**SUB A,[m]** Subtract Data Memory from ACC

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is

stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be

cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m]$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ



**SUBM A,[m]** Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is

stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be

cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m]$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

**SUB A,x** Subtract immediate data from ACC

Description The immediate data specified by the code is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator.

The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC - x$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

**SWAP [m]** Swap nibbles of Data Memory

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged.

Operation [m].3 $\sim$ [m].0  $\leftrightarrow$  [m].7 $\sim$ [m].4

Affected flag(s) None

**SWAPA [m]** Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged. The

result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation  $ACC.3 \sim ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7 \sim [m].4$ 

 $ACC.7 \sim ACC.4 \leftarrow [m].3 \sim [m].0$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**SZ [m]** Skip if Data Memory is 0

Description If the contents of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this

requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

**SZA [m]** Skip if Data Memory is 0 with data movement to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. If the value is zero,

the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the

program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m]$ 

Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

**SZ [m].i** Skip if bit i of Data Memory is 0

Description If bit i of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires

the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle

instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m].i=0

Affected flag(s) None

Rev. 1.10 136 May 19, 2017



**TABRD [m]** Read table (specific page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (specific page) addressed by the table pointer pair

(TBLP and TBHP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow program code (low byte)$ 

TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

**TABRDL [m]** Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved

to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow \text{program code (low byte)}$ 

TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

**ITABRD [m]** Increment table pointer low byte first and read table to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the program code addressed by the

table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte

moved to TBLH.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow \text{program code (low byte)}$ 

TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

**ITABRDL [m]** Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the low byte of the program code

(last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and

the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow \text{program code (low byte)}$ 

TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

**XOR A,[m]** Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical XOR

operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC "XOR" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

XORM A,[m] Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical XOR

operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC "XOR" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**XOR A,x** Logical XOR immediate data to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified immediate data perform a bitwise logical XOR

operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC "XOR" x$ 

Affected flag(s) Z



#### **Extended Instruction Definition**

The extended instructions are used to directly access the data stored in any data memory sections.

**LADC A,[m]** Add Data Memory to ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added.

The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

**LADCM A,[m]** Add ACC to Data Memory with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory, Accumulator and the carry flag are added.

The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

 $\begin{aligned} & \text{Operation} & & [m] \leftarrow ACC + [m] + C \\ & \text{Affected flag(s)} & & \text{OV, Z, AC, C, SC} \end{aligned}$ 

**LADD A,[m]** Add Data Memory to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added.

The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC + [m]$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

**LADDM A,[m]** Add ACC to Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator are added.

The result is stored in the specified Data Memory.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC + [m]$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC

**LAND A,[m]** Logical AND Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical AND

operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC "AND" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**LANDM A,[m]** Logical AND ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical AND

operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC "AND" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

LCLR [m] Clear Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow 00H$ Affected flag(s) None

LCLR [m].i Clear bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is cleared to 0.

Operation  $[m].i \leftarrow 0$ Affected flag(s) None



LCPL [m] Complement Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which

previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow \overline{[m]}$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**LCPLA [m]** Complement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is logically complemented (1's complement). Bits which

previously contained a 1 are changed to 0 and vice versa. The complemented result is stored in

the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**LDAA [m]** Decimal-Adjust ACC for addition with result in Data Memory

Description Convert the contents of the Accumulator value to a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value

resulting from the previous addition of two BCD variables. If the low nibble is greater than 9 or if AC flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the low nibble. Otherwise the low nibble remains unchanged. If the high nibble is greater than 9 or if the C flag is set, then a value of 6 will be added to the high nibble. Essentially, the decimal conversion is performed by adding 00H, 06H, 60H or 66H depending on the Accumulator and flag conditions. Only the C flag may be affected by this instruction which indicates that if the original BCD sum is greater than

100, it allows multiple precision decimal addition.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 00H$  or

 $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 06H \text{ or}$   $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 60H \text{ or}$  $[m] \leftarrow ACC + 66H$ 

Affected flag(s)

**LDEC [m]** Decrement Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**LDECA [m]** Decrement Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is decremented by 1. The result is stored in the

Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**LINC [m]** Increment Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**LINCA [m]** Increment Data Memory with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is incremented by 1. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$ 

Affected flag(s) Z



LMOV A,[m] Move Data Memory to ACC

The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. Description

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m]$ Affected flag(s) None

LMOV [m],A Move ACC to Data Memory

The contents of the Accumulator are copied to the specified Data Memory. Description

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC$ Affected flag(s) None

LOR A,[m] Logical OR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise

logical OR operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC "OR" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

LORM A,[m] Logical OR ACC to Data Memory

Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical OR Description

operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC "OR" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

LRL [m] Rotate Data Memory left

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0.

Operation  $[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ 

 $[m].0 \leftarrow [m].7$ 

Affected flag(s) None

LRLA [m] Rotate Data Memory left with result in ACC

The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated left by 1 bit with bit 7 rotated into bit 0. Description

The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain

unchanged.

Operation  $ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ 

 $ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7$ 

Affected flag(s) None

LRLC [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7

replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 0.

Operation  $[m].(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ 

> $[m].0 \leftarrow C$  $C \leftarrow [m].7$

C Affected flag(s)

LRLCA [m] Rotate Data Memory left through Carry with result in ACC

Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated left by 1 bit. Bit 7 replaces the Description

Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into the bit 0. The rotated result is stored in the

Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation  $ACC.(i+1) \leftarrow [m].i; (i=0\sim6)$ 

 $ACC.0 \leftarrow C$ 

 $C \leftarrow [m].7$ 

Affected flag(s) C



**LRR [m]** Rotate Data Memory right

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0 rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i  $\leftarrow$  [m].(i+1); (i=0 $\sim$ 6)

 $[m].7 \leftarrow [m].0$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**LRRA [m]** Rotate Data Memory right with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory is rotated right by 1 bit with bit 0

rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the Accumulator and the contents of the

Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i  $\leftarrow$  [m].(i+1); (i=0 $\sim$ 6)

 $ACC.7 \leftarrow [m].0$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**LRRC [m]** Rotate Data Memory right through Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0

replaces the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7.

Operation [m].i  $\leftarrow$  [m].(i+1); (i=0 $\sim$ 6)

 $[m].7 \leftarrow C$ 

 $C \leftarrow [m].0$ 

Affected flag(s) C

**LRRCA [m]** Rotate Data Memory right through Carry with result in ACC

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the carry flag are rotated right by 1 bit. Bit 0 replaces

the Carry bit and the original carry flag is rotated into bit 7. The rotated result is stored in the

Accumulator and the contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation ACC.i  $\leftarrow$  [m].(i+1); (i=0 $\sim$ 6)

 $ACC.7 \leftarrow C$ 

 $C \leftarrow [m].0$ 

Affected flag(s) C

**LSBC A,[m]** Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are

subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is

positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m] - C$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

**LSBCM A,[m]** Subtract Data Memory from ACC with Carry and result in Data Memory

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory and the complement of the carry flag are

subtracted from the Accumulator. The result is stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is

positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m] - C$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ



**LSDZ [m]** Skip if decrement Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0 the

following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program

proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow [m] - 1$ 

Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

**LSDZA [m]** Skip if decrement Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first decremented by 1. If the result is 0, the

following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy

instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0,

the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m] - 1$ 

Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

**LSET [m]** Set Data Memory

Description Each bit of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow FFH$ Affected flag(s) None

**LSET [m].i** Set bit of Data Memory

Description Bit i of the specified Data Memory is set to 1.

Operation  $[m].i \leftarrow 1$ Affected flag(s) None

**LSIZ [m]** Skip if increment Data Memory is 0

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the

following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program

proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow [m] + 1$ 

Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

**LSIZA [m]** Skip if increment Data Memory is zero with result in ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are first incremented by 1. If the result is 0, the

following instruction is skipped. The result is stored in the Accumulator but the specified Data Memory contents remain unchanged. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not

0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m] + 1$ 

Skip if ACC=0

Affected flag(s) None

**LSNZ [m].i** Skip if Data Memory is not 0

Description If the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the

insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle

instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if  $[m].i \neq 0$ 

Affected flag(s) None



**LSNZ [m]** Skip if Data Memory is not 0

Description If the content of the specified Data Memory is not 0, the following instruction is skipped. As

this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if  $[m] \neq 0$ 

Affected flag(s) None

LSUB A,[m] Subtract Data Memory from ACC

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is

stored in the Accumulator. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be

cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC - [m]$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

**LSUBM A,[m]** Subtract Data Memory from ACC with result in Data Memory

Description The specified Data Memory is subtracted from the contents of the Accumulator. The result is

stored in the Data Memory. Note that if the result of subtraction is negative, the C flag will be

cleared to 0, otherwise if the result is positive or zero, the C flag will be set to 1.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC - [m]$ Affected flag(s) OV, Z, AC, C, SC, CZ

**LSWAP [m]** Swap nibbles of Data Memory

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged.

Operation  $[m].3\sim[m].0 \leftrightarrow [m].7\sim[m].4$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**LSWAPA [m]** Swap nibbles of Data Memory with result in ACC

Description The low-order and high-order nibbles of the specified Data Memory are interchanged. The

result is stored in the Accumulator. The contents of the Data Memory remain unchanged.

Operation  $ACC.3 \sim ACC.0 \leftarrow [m].7 \sim [m].4$ 

 $ACC.7{\sim}ACC.4 \leftarrow [m].3{\sim}[m].0$ 

Affected flag(s) None

**LSZ [m]** Skip if Data Memory is 0

Description If the contents of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this

requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two

cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None

**LSZA [m]** Skip if Data Memory is 0 with data movement to ACC

Description The contents of the specified Data Memory are copied to the Accumulator. If the value is zero,

the following instruction is skipped. As this requires the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0 the

program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow [m]$ 

Skip if [m]=0

Affected flag(s) None



**LSZ [m].i** Skip if bit i of Data Memory is 0

Description If bit i of the specified Data Memory is 0, the following instruction is skipped. As this requires

the insertion of a dummy instruction while the next instruction is fetched, it is a two cycle instruction. If the result is not 0, the program proceeds with the following instruction.

Operation Skip if [m].i=0

Affected flag(s) None

**LTABRD [m]** Read table (current page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (current page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is

moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow program code (low byte)$ 

TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

**LTABRDL [m]** Read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description The low byte of the program code (last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved

to the specified Data Memory and the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow \text{program code (low byte)}$ 

TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

**LITABRD [m]** Increment table pointer low byte first and read table to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the program code addressed by the

table pointer (TBHP and TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and the high byte

moved to TBLH.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow \text{program code (low byte)}$ 

TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

**LITABRDL [m]** Increment table pointer low byte first and read table (last page) to TBLH and Data Memory

Description Increment table pointer low byte, TBLP, first and then the low byte of the program code

(last page) addressed by the table pointer (TBLP) is moved to the specified Data Memory and

the high byte moved to TBLH.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow \text{program code (low byte)}$ 

TBLH ← program code (high byte)

Affected flag(s) None

**LXOR A,[m]** Logical XOR Data Memory to ACC

Description Data in the Accumulator and the specified Data Memory perform a bitwise logical XOR

operation. The result is stored in the Accumulator.

Operation  $ACC \leftarrow ACC "XOR" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

**LXORM A,[m]** Logical XOR ACC to Data Memory

Description Data in the specified Data Memory and the Accumulator perform a bitwise logical XOR

operation. The result is stored in the Data Memory.

Operation  $[m] \leftarrow ACC "XOR" [m]$ 

Affected flag(s) Z

Rev. 1.10 May 19, 2017



## **Package Information**

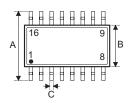
Note that the package information provided here is for consultation purposes only. As this information may be updated at regular intervals users are reminded to consult the <u>Holtek website</u> for the latest version of the <u>Package/Carton information</u>.

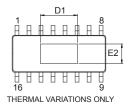
Additional supplementary information with regard to packaging is listed below. Click on the relevant section to be transferred to the relevant website page.

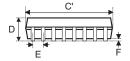
- Further Package Information (include Outline Dimensions, Product Tape and Reel Specifications)
- Packing Meterials Information
- · Carton information



# 16-pin NSOP (150mil) Outline Dimensions (Exposed Pad)









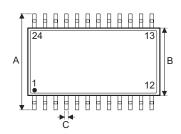
| Symbol | Dimensions in inch |           |       |  |
|--------|--------------------|-----------|-------|--|
| Symbol | Min.               | Nom.      | Max.  |  |
| А      | _                  | 0.236 BSC | _     |  |
| В      | _                  | 0.154 BSC | _     |  |
| С      | 0.012              | _         | 0.020 |  |
| C,     | _                  | 0.390 BSC | _     |  |
| D      | _                  | _         | 0.069 |  |
| D1     | 0.059              | _         | _     |  |
| E      | _                  | 0.050 BSC | _     |  |
| E2     | 0.039              | _         | _     |  |
| F      | 0.004              | _         | 0.010 |  |
| G      | 0.016              | _         | 0.050 |  |
| Н      | 0.004              | _         | 0.010 |  |
| α      | 0°                 | _         | 8°    |  |

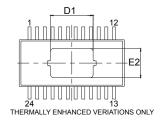
| Cymhal | Dimensions in mm |          |      |  |
|--------|------------------|----------|------|--|
| Symbol | Min.             | Nom.     | Max. |  |
| A      | _                | 6.00 BSC | _    |  |
| В      | _                | 3.90 BSC | _    |  |
| С      | 0.31             | _        | 0.51 |  |
| C,     | _                | 9.90 BSC | _    |  |
| D      | _                | _        | 1.75 |  |
| D1     | 1.50             | _        | _    |  |
| E      | _                | 1.27 BSC | _    |  |
| E2     | 1.00             | _        | _    |  |
| F      | 0.10             | _        | 0.25 |  |
| G      | 0.40             | _        | 1.27 |  |
| Н      | 0.10             | _        | 0.25 |  |
| α      | 0°               | _        | 8°   |  |

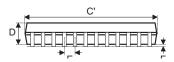
Rev. 1.10 May 19, 2017



# 24-pin SSOP (150mil) Outline Dimensions (Exposed Pad)









| Cumbal | Dimensions in inch |           |       |  |
|--------|--------------------|-----------|-------|--|
| Symbol | Min.               | Nom.      | Max.  |  |
| A      | _                  | 0.236 BSC | _     |  |
| В      | _                  | 0.154 BSC |       |  |
| С      | 0.008              | _         | 0.012 |  |
| C'     | _                  | 0.341 BSC | _     |  |
| D      | _                  | _         | 0.069 |  |
| D1     | _                  | 0.140     | _     |  |
| E      | _                  | 0.025 BSC | _     |  |
| E2     | _                  | 0.096     | _     |  |
| F      | 0.004              | _         | 0.010 |  |
| G      | 0.016              | _         | 0.050 |  |
| Н      | 0.004              | _         | 0.010 |  |
| α      | 0°                 | _         | 8°    |  |

| Cumbal | Dimensions mm |           |      |  |
|--------|---------------|-----------|------|--|
| Symbol | Min.          | Nom.      | Max. |  |
| A      | _             | 6.00 BSC  | _    |  |
| В      | _             | 3.90 BSC  | _    |  |
| С      | 0.20          | _         | 0.30 |  |
| C,     | _             | 8.66 BSC  | _    |  |
| D      | _             | _         | 1.75 |  |
| D1     | _             | 3.56      | _    |  |
| E      | _             | 0.635 BSC | _    |  |
| E2     | _             | 2.44      | _    |  |
| F      | 0.10          | _         | 0.25 |  |
| G      | 0.41          | _         | 1.27 |  |
| Н      | 0.10          | _         | 0.25 |  |
| α      | 0°            | _         | 8°   |  |



## Copyright® 2017 by HOLTEK SEMICONDUCTOR INC.

The information appearing in this Data Sheet is believed to be accurate at the time of publication. However, Holtek assumes no responsibility arising from the use of the specifications described. The applications mentioned herein are used solely for the purpose of illustration and Holtek makes no warranty or representation that such applications will be suitable without further modification, nor recommends the use of its products for application that may present a risk to human life due to malfunction or otherwise. Holtek's products are not authorized for use as critical components in life support devices or systems. Holtek reserves the right to alter its products without prior notification. For the most up-to-date information, please visit our web site at http://www.holtek.com.tw/en/home.

Rev. 1.10 148 May 19, 2017